الجامعة الإسلامية العالمية ماليزيا
INTERNATIONAL ISLAMIC UNIVERSITY MALAYSIA
Garden of Knowledge and Virtue
Kulliyyah of Economics and Management Sciences

IIUM Journal of Case Studies in Management

Vol. 16 No. 2 August 2025

Copyright Page

Correspondence

Editor-in-Chief
IIUM Journal of Case Studies in Management (IJCSM)
Department of Business Administration
Kulliyyah of Economics and Management Sciences
International Islamic University Malaysia (IIUM).
P.O. Box 10, 50728 Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia
Website: https://journals.iium.edu.my/ijcsm/index.php/jcsm
Email Editor-in-Chief: suhaimims@iium.edu.my
Email Editor: nkamariahwahid@iium.edu.my

Published by
IIUM Press, International Islamic University Malaysia (IIUM).
P.O. Box 10, 50728 Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia
Telephone: +6 03 6421 5014
Fax: +6 03 6421 6298

ISSN: 2810-2327 e-ISSN: 2710-7175

Cases published in the Journal present the views of the authors and do not necessarily reflect the views of the Journal.

Published: August 2025

IIUM Journal of Case Studies in Management (IJCSM)
Volume 16 Number 2 August 2025
ISSN: 2810-2327 e-ISSN: 2710-7175

Editorial Information

Prof. Dr. Selim Ahmed
World School of Business
World University of Bangladesh
Dhaka, Bangladesh

Prof. Dr. Azmawani Abd Rahman
President & CEO
Putra Business School
Universiti Putra Malaysia
43400 Serdang, Selangor, Malaysia

Dr. Azilah Anis
Department of Technology and Supply Chain Management Studies
Faculty of Business and Management
Universiti Teknologi MARA, Puncak Alam Campus
42300 Bandar Puncak Alam, Selangor Malaysia

Prof. Dr. AKM Ahasanul Haque
Kulliyyah of Economics and Management Sciences
International Islamic University Malaysia

IIUM Journal of Case Studies in Management (IJCSM)
Volume 16 Number 2 August 2025
ISSN: 2810-2327 e-ISSN: 2710-7175

TABLE OF CONTENTS

IIUM Journal of Case Studies in Management (IJCSM)
Volume 16 Number 2 August 2025
ISSN: 2810-2327 e-ISSN: 2710-7175

Editorial Notes

Upholding *Tawhidic* Epistemology and Advancing *Ummatic* Excellence through Case-Based Scholarship.

This volume of the IIUM Journal of Case Studies in Management (Volume 16, Number 2, August 2025) embodies the theme of upholding *Tawhidic* epistemology and advancing *ummatic* excellence through case-based scholarship. The cases presented are not simply academic exercises in problem-solving; they reflect a deeper commitment to integrating *mas'uliyyah* (divine accountability), *amānah* (trust), *rahmah* (compassion), and *'adl* (justice) into managerial thought and organisational conduct. Together, they nurture a scholarly tradition where business and management are pursued as acts of responsibility to Allah, society, and creation.

The opening case, "Management Lessons from the Battle of Uhud", sets the intellectual and spiritual tone by revisiting the prophetic leadership of Rasulullah ﷺ. It shows how timeless lessons from history provide enduring guidance for contemporary leaders in areas such as strategic planning, contingency preparedness, and the ethics of consultation (shura). This case exemplifies *tarbiyyah* (education), *adāb* (manners) and *hikmāh* (wisdom), highlighting humility, foresight, and resolve as essential qualities for balancing worldly responsibilities with eternal accountability.

Building on this foundation, the case "Excella Archery Distribution Sdn. Bhd. and the Sunnah: A Business Journey to Restore the Prophetic Way of Life" demonstrates how business can be a vehicle for reviving *Sunnah* practices and preserving cultural heritage. By aligning its identity with the Prophet's encouragement of archery, the company positions itself uniquely within a competitive market through authentic faith-based engagement. Its initiatives—from Islamic teaching-infused training programmes to culturally inspired product design, community partnerships, and educational content—illustrate how commerce can cultivate discipline, spirituality, and social bonds. This case pioneers the harmonization of innovation with spiritual and cultural preservation, inspiring a new generation to embrace archery as both a sport and a *Sunnah*.

The theme of sustainability and stewardship is explored in "Coldplay's Sustainability Revolution" and "Qanaah Enterprise", both of which expand our understanding of *khilafah* (vicegerency). They challenge readers to rethink success by echoing the *Qur'anic* principle *"la tufsidu fil-ard*" (do not spread corruption on Earth), reminding us that business must go beyond profit-seeking toward fulfilling humanity's trust as caretakers of creation in the spirit of *rahmatan lil-'alamin* (mercy to all worlds).

Equally important are the cases on grassroots-driven entrepreneurship, including "HeeJau Urban Farmer Enterprise" and "Ilhamtaufiq Group". These examples show how faith, resilience, and digital innovation can empower communities. Embodying values such as *niyya*h (intention), *ihsān* (compassion), *ta'awun* (mutual cooperation), and *tawakkul* (reliance upon Allah), they demonstrate that socio-economic empowerment becomes transformative when anchored in spiritual consciousness and collective well-being.

The challenges of justice and ethics in industrial relations are highlighted in "The Spirit of Aid" and "The Bonus That Wasn't Out", which examine workplace justice through the principles of *'adl* (justice), *shur*a (consultation), and *maslahah* (public good). Framed within the values of Malaysia Madani, they offer fresh approaches to post-pandemic stakeholder management. Complementing these are "X-Factory Ethical Dilemma" and "TikTok's Global Takeover", which engage with the ethical complexities of technological disruption and global expansion, underscoring the need for value-based innovation and moral leadership in a rapidly changing world.

Finally, the volume concludes with cases on ESG and strategic transformation, notably "Alam Flora Environmental Solutions" and "Al Dobowi Group". These cases highlight how strategic marketing, ESG integration, and digital transformation can drive competitive advantage while upholding Islamic principles of *wasatiyyah* (balance). They reaffirm that economic ambition and ethical responsibility are not opposing goals, but complementary imperatives for holistic development.

In conclusion, this issue reflects the spirit of *Tawhidic* integration, where *'ilm* (knowledge) is pursued not as an end in itself but as a means of achieving *maslahah* (public good). The cases collectively reaffirm that the true objective of management is the attainment of *al-falah* (holistic success) for individuals, institutions, and society. This collection demonstrates how case-based scholarship, when rooted in faith, can simultaneously sharpen intellectual inquiry and advance *ummatic* excellence.

Prof Dr Suhaimi Mhd Sarif
Editor-in-chief

Dr Nur Kamariah Abdul Wahid
Editor

IIUM Journal of Case Studies in Management: Vol. 16, No. 2, August 2025, pp.1-3
ISSN: 2810-2327 e-ISSN: 2710-7175
Received: 24 February 2025 Reviewed: 3 March 2025 Revised: 9 July 2025 Accepted: 14 July 2025

Management Lessons from The Battle of Uhud

Azura Omar
Assistant Professor
Department of Business Administration
Kulliyyah of Economics and Management Sciences
International Islamic University Malaysia
Email: azura_omar@iium.edu.my

Abstract
The Battle of Uhud is the second great battle between the Quraish of Makkah against the Muslims of Madinah. Regarded as one of most important battle in Islamic history by many Muslim scholars, the Battled of Uhud was Quaraish's revenge over their defeat at Badr. Like in the Battle of Badr, the Muslims were outnumbered and relied on war strategies crafted by the Prophet Muhammad ﷺ (Peace be Upon Him). The Muslims won the initial scrimmage but lost the battle.

Keywords: Battle of Uhud, Management, Strategy

The Battle of Uhud is the second great battle between the Quraish of Mecca against the Muslims of Medina. The battle took place three years after the Muslims *hijrah* to Medina and one year after the Battle of Badr. Regarded as one of most important battle in Islamic history by many Muslim scholars, the Battled of Uhud was Quraish's revenge over their humiliating defeat at Badr. An attempt was also made on the life of the Prophet Muhammad ﷺ (Peace be Upon Him) to effectively stop the raise of Islam.

Like in the Battle of Badr, the Quraish had an overwhelming advantage over the Muslims. The enemy's army outnumbered the Muslims by 8.2 times. The Quraish had 3,700 men and 300 camels and 200 horses. The Muslims had 754 men and 4 horses Many accounts of the battle says that only 100 Muslims had full war gears like shields and amours. But winning was not an impossibility as the Muslims won their first encounter with the Quraish despite being outnumbered at the Battle of Badr. Stories of this first battle stated that while the Muslims had 313 men, 70 camels and 2 horses, the Quraish has over 1000 over men, 100 camels and advanced weaponry. Victory of Badr was partly due to the strategy that Prophet Muhammad ﷺ (Peace be Upon Him) employed, the high morale amongst the Muslims to *jihad* in the name of Allah and the miracles Allah blessed the believers, which included sending an army of angels to fight with the Muslims.

To face the daunting challenge of defending themselves against the might of the Quraish, the Muslims debated whether they should bring the fight into Medina or seek to meet the enemy outside of Medina. The Prophet Muhammad ﷺ (Peace be Upon Him) after seeking the opinions of his followers decided on the later. The Muslim marched to the Mount of Uhud, just outside Medina. The Prophet Muhammad ﷺ (Peace be Upon Him) planned to use the geographic topography of the Mount to reduce the size disadvantage of the Muslims. Mount of Uhud is a strategic ground with naturally occurring structural defences. The Prophet Muhammad ﷺ (Peace be Upon Him) first divided the Muslims based on their skills sets and formed three lines of defences. He assigned 50 marksmen to a nearby rocky hill at the west side of the Muslim camp. The marksmen, who were all skilled archers, were tasked to protect the left flank of the Muslim cavalry. Mount of Uhud situated on the east side of the Muslim camp "protected" the right flank of the Calvary. The Prophet Muhammad ﷺ (Peace be Upon Him) instructed the marksmen to only focus on what they were assigned to do and to maintain their positions no matter what. *Sahih al- Bukhari*, 4:52:276 mentions:

> The Prophet Muhammad ﷺ (Peace be Upon Him) appointed Abdullah bin Jubair as the commander of the infantrymen (archers) who were fifty on the day (of the battle) of Uhud. He instructed them, "Stick to your place, and don't leave it even if you see birds snatching us, till I send for you; and if you see that we have defeated the infidels and made them flee, even then you should not leave your place till I send for you."

This strategy of the Prophet Muhammad ﷺ (Peace be Upon Him) was indeed superior. The early victories in the Battle of Uhud belong to the Muslims. The Quraish retreated to their base camp after their first attack was foiled. The above hadith further reveals:

> Then the infidels were defeated. By Allah, I saw the women fleeing lifting up their clothes revealing their leg-bangles and their legs.

However, as the Muslim cavalry began to adopt a more aggressive attracting strategy, some of the Muslim abandoned their core defensive strategy. Some marksmen, assigned to protect the cavalry, abandoned their position when they saw the treasures left by the fleeing enemy. For one brief period, the Muslims were blinded by worldly gains and lost focus on their desire to protect Islam and fight in the name of Allah. The conclusion of the above hadith states:

> So, the companions of 'Abdullah bin Jubair said, "The booty! O people, the booty! Your companions have become victorious, what are you waiting for now?" 'Abdullah bin Jubair said, "Have you forgotten what Allah's Apostle said to you?" They replied, "By Allah! We will go to the people (i.e. the enemy) and collect our share from the war booty." But when they went to them, they were forced to turn back defeated. At that time Allah's Apostle in their rear was calling them back. Only twelve men remained with the Prophet and the infidels martyred seventy men from us.

Responding to this "change of strategy" of the Muslims. the Quraish launched a counterattack. Led by war veteran Khalid ibn al-Walid, a splinter group went to side of Mount of Uhud which was previously occupied by the marksmen and attacked the Muslims from behind. Unprotected, the Muslims calvary crumbled. The Prophet Muhammad ﷺ (Peace be Upon Him) was seriously injured but survived because of the heroism of some of Muslim warriors, including Nusybah Umm, a wife and mother, who was there to tend to the injured but picked a sword to protect the Messenger of Allah, Prophet Muhammad ﷺ (Peace be Upon Him). The Muslims lost some of their greatest warriors in the Battle of Uhud, including the “lion of god” Al-Hamzah. The Muslims won the initial scrimmage but lost the battle.

References

As-Sibaa’ie, M (2003). The Life of the Prophet Muhammad: Highlights and Lessons (Nasiruddin al-Khabatt, Trans.). International Islamic Publishing House. Riyad.

Sahih al- Bukhari, Volume 4, Book 52, Hadith 276. Retrieved February 15, 2025, from *https://www.iium.edu.my/deed/hadith/bukhari/052_sbt.html*

Discussion

1. What could be the stated objectives of the Quraish and the Muslims in the Battle of Uhud?
2. Which two (2) management functions or related activities did the Muslim army perform well? Which two (2) did they perform poorly?
3. The modern management ideas of organizing identifies 6 elements of organizational design that affects the functions of the organization. Which of these elements, including those that were abandoned during the battle, can be seen in the Muslim army at the Battle of Uhud?

IIUM Journal of Case Studies in Management: Vol. 16, No. 2, August 2025, pp.4-25
ISSN: 2810-2327 e-ISSN: 2710-7175
Received: 19 March 2025 Reviewed: 16 April 2025 Revised: 14 July 2025 Accepted: 17 July 2025

Coldplay's Sustainability Revolution: Redefining Environmental Responsibility in the Music Industry

Tejinder Singh Lakhwani
School of Management and Entrepreneurship (SME), IIT Jodhpur
Email: lakhwani.1@iitj.ac.in

Dr. Yerasani Sinjana
School of Management and Entrepreneurship (SME), IIT Jodhpur
Email: ysinjana@gmail.com

Dr. Anuj Pal Kapoor
School of Management and Entrepreneurship (SME), IIT Jodhpur
Email: anujkapoor@iitj.ac.in

Abstract
The environmental impact of the music industry, mainly large-scale concerts, and world tours, has come under increasing scrutiny due to high carbon emissions, energy consumption, and waste generation. Coldplay's *Music of the Spheres* World Tour represents a groundbreaking effort to integrate sustainability into live music events. This case study examines Coldplay's sustainability initiatives, including renewable energy adoption, carbon reduction strategies, waste management innovations, and audience engagement in eco-conscious activities. By leveraging solar panels, kinetic dance floors, and biofuel generators, the tour significantly reduced direct CO_2 emissions compared to their previous tour. The band also implemented large-scale reforestation projects, offsetting emissions by planting over 7 million trees worldwide. Coldplay's efforts highlight the potential for sustainable touring models, demonstrating that artists can minimize their environmental footprint while maintaining high-quality performances. The study also explores key challenges, such as infrastructure limitations, reliance on corporate partnerships, and the high costs of sustainability investments. Despite these obstacles, Coldplay's initiatives provide a replicable framework for the music industry, influencing artists, event organizers, and policymakers to prioritize sustainability in live entertainment. This case study concludes with recommendations for expanding green touring practices, emphasizing the need for industry-wide collaboration, technological innovation, and policy support to drive long-term environmental change. Coldplay's leadership in sustainable touring sets a precedent for the future of the entertainment industry, proving that music can be a catalyst for climate action.

Keywords: Sustainable tours, Coldplay initiatives, Carbon-neutral concerts, Green innovation, Renewable energy, Climate action, Eco-friendly strategies

Introduction

The global music industry is a significant cultural and economic force, yet its environmental footprint has become increasingly scrutinized due to high carbon emissions, excessive energy consumption, and waste generation (Brennan, 2020; Nature, 2024; Gibson, 2019). Large-scale concerts and world tours require energy-intensive production, extensive transportation, and single-use materials, all contributing to greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions (Titon, 2009). Bottrill, Liverman, & Boykoff (2010) study estimated that the UK music industry generates 540,000 tons of CO_2 annually, with concerts and festivals among the most significant contributors. Among the artists addressing this challenge, Coldplay has emerged as a pioneer in sustainable touring (Rolling Stone, 2022; MIT Environmental Solutions Initiative, 2022). Coldplay paused touring to reassess its environmental impact before launching its Music of the Spheres World Tour in 2022 (BBC News, 2019). Their commitment to reducing tour-related emissions by at least 50% (Coldplay, 2024) led to a comprehensive sustainability strategy featuring:

- Renewable energy integration through solar panels, kinetic dance floors, and biofuel generators (MIT Environmental Solutions Initiative, 2022; Sustainability Magazine, 2023).
- Carbon footprint reduction via optimized logistics, biofuel-powered transport, and large-scale reforestation projects (Variety, 2023; Albitar & Hussainey, 2023).
- Sustainable waste management by eliminating single-use plastics and introducing biodegradable stage materials (Breathe ESG, 2023; Publicover et al., 2019).
- Audience participation in energy generation allows fans to contribute to sustainability through kinetic dance floors and bike-powered charging stations (Coldplay, 2024; Rolling Stone, 2022).

As a result, Coldplay set a new industry standard for eco-conscious live events (MIT Environmental Solutions Initiative, 2022; Silva, Patrocínio, & Albuquerque, 2023). Their approach aligns with global climate initiatives, particularly the United Nations Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs):

- **SDG 7: Affordable and Clean Energy** – Implementing renewable energy solutions in concerts (ESCAP, 2021).
- **SDG 12: Responsible Consumption and Production** – Reducing waste and promoting ethical sourcing (Richardson, 2019).
- **SDG 13: Climate Action** – Minimizing emissions through sustainability-driven innovations (Planet Reimagined, 2022).

This case study critically examines Coldplay's sustainability efforts, evaluating their effectiveness and scalability within the global music industry. Specifically, it explores:

- Coldplay's sustainability framework includes an analysis of its 12-point strategy, which covers renewable energy adoption, carbon offsetting, and waste reduction initiatives.
- The measured impact of sustainable touring, assessing emissions, waste, and energy consumption reductions while maintaining high-quality performances.
- The challenges faced and limitations, examining the financial, logistical, and technological barriers to large-scale sustainable touring.
- The lessons for the music industry identify best practices and strategies that other artists, event organizers, and policymakers can adopt.

By analyzing Coldplay's innovative sustainability model, this case study provides insights into how the global music industry can transition toward environmentally responsible live entertainment, ensuring that concerts inspire change without leaving a harmful environmental footprint.

Sustainability Strategy & Implementation: Coldplay's Commitment to a Greener Future

Coldplay's Music of the Spheres World Tour represents a pioneering transformation in sustainable touring, integrating carbon reduction strategies, renewable energy adoption, waste minimization, and audience engagement (Guerreschi, 2021; Glassett, 2014). The band developed a 12-point plan to operationalize their sustainability goals, independently validated by research institutions such as the MIT Environmental Solutions Initiative (2022) and Planet Reimagined (2022). Three core principles guide this structured approach (Rodrigues & Ventura, 2024):

- Reduce – Cutting direct CO_2 emissions through energy-efficient technologies, sustainable transport, and responsible material sourcing (Chin & Xiang, 2022).
- Reinvent – Integrating innovative green solutions, such as rechargeable show batteries, kinetic dance floors, and sustainable aviation fuels (Kačerauskas, Streimikiene, & Bartkute, 2021).
- Restore – Offsetting unavoidable emissions through large-scale reforestation, conservation, and carbon sequestration projects (Connolly, Dupras, & Séguin, 2016).

Breakdown of the 12-Point Sustainability Plan

Coldplay's sustainability framework includes key initiatives to reduce environmental impact (Marchini, 2013; Angelakoglou & Gaidajis, 2015). Among them, the band prioritized renewable energy sources, including solar panels, kinetic dance floors, biofuel generators, and rechargeable battery storage systems (Mosley, 2015).

1. **Renewable Energy Adoption** – Concerts powered by a mobile, rechargeable show battery system (co-developed with BMW) that runs on solar, kinetic, and biofuel energy. Portable solar panels and biofuel generators replace traditional diesel generators (BBC News, 2019; Aswad, 2023).
2. **Green Transportation Initiatives** – Coldplay reduced aviation emissions by prioritizing commercial flights over private jets and investing in Sustainable Aviation Fuel (SAF), cutting air travel emissions by up to 80% (Chin & Xiang, 2022). The band also used electric and biofuel-powered vehicles for short-haul travel and equipment transport (MIT Environmental Solutions Initiative, 2022).
3. **Audience-Powered Energy Generation** – Fans generated electricity through kinetic dance floors and bike-powered charging stations, contributing to a self-sustaining concert ecosystem (Publicover et al., 2018).
4. **Waste Reduction & Circular Economy** – Coldplay implemented a zero-waste policy, achieving an 86% reuse rate for LED wristbands and eliminating single-use plastics at all venues (Paton & McCullen, 2014; Guerreschi, 2021).
5. **Water Conservation Measures** – Concerts included free water refill stations, significantly reducing bottled water consumption (Schippers & Grant, 2016).
6. **Sustainable Merchandising** – Coldplay used organic cotton, recycled materials, and compostable packaging for all tour merchandise (Sujanska & Nadanyiova, 2023).
7. **Large-Scale Carbon Offsetting Through Reforestation** – The band's "One Ticket = One Tree" policy resulted in 7 million trees planted globally, enhancing biodiversity and carbon sequestration (Connolly, Dupras, & Séguin, 2016).
8. **Sustainable Stage & Production Materials** – Stages were built from recycled steel, bamboo, and low-carbon materials, reducing the environmental footprint of stage construction (Wells & Heming, 2009).

9. **Eco-Friendly Lighting & Audio Systems** – Coldplay optimized energy use, adopting low-energy LED screens, efficient PA systems, and laser technology, reducing power consumption by 50% (Mosley, 2015).
10. **Environmental Partnerships** – Collaborations with The Ocean Cleanup, ClientEarth, and Project Seagrass supported marine conservation and ecosystem restoration (Publicover et al., 2018).
11. **Industry-Wide Advocacy** – Coldplay has engaged policymakers and corporate sponsors to promote sustainable touring standards, setting a precedent for the broader music industry (Machado & Burns, 2014).
12. **Third-Party Impact Assessment & Transparency** – Sustainability claims were independently validated by MIT Environmental Solutions Initiative and Hope Solutions, ensuring scientific credibility (Angelakoglou & Gaidajis, 2015).

Scientific Validation & Industry Collaborations
Coldplay's sustainability initiatives have been independently verified, ensuring transparency and credibility (Guerreschi, 2021). The MIT Environmental Solutions Initiative (2022) confirmed that Coldplay's tour significantly reduced direct CO_2 emissions compared to previous tours. In addition, DHL GoGreen optimized freight emissions by:

- Using biofuels and electric transport for equipment movement.
- Reducing packaging waste and cutting emissions by 33% (Marchini, 2013).

Coldplay also aligned its efforts with Live Nation's Green Nation initiative, which promotes industry-wide adoption of sustainable touring practices (Rodrigues & Ventura, 2024).

Industry Influence & Legacy
Coldplay's sustainability model has set a new precedent in the global music industry, proving that low-carbon, large-scale touring is commercially viable (Kačerauskas, Streimikiene, & Bartkute, 2021). Their success challenges traditional norms, offering a scalable framework for:

- **Artists** – Encouraging musicians to adopt eco-conscious touring strategies (McKenzie-Mohr, 2002).
- **Festivals & Event Organizers** – Promoting renewable energy and waste reduction initiatives (Glassett, 2014).
- **Policymakers** – Establishing sustainability standards for live entertainment (Paton & McCullen, 2014).

As climate-conscious operations become an industry priority, Coldplay's pioneering model serves as a blueprint for future sustainable tours, inspiring industry-wide transformations (Ramesh, 2023).

Comparative Analysis with Other Sustainable Touring Models
As the global music industry increasingly embraces sustainability, several artists and festivals have integrated eco-conscious initiatives. While Coldplay's Music of the Spheres Tour represents one of the most comprehensive sustainability efforts in live touring, examining how their approach compares to other notable green initiatives is useful. Many artists have introduced sustainability measures, but Coldplay's integration of audience-powered energy, third-party sustainability validation, and large-scale reforestation efforts distinguishes their approach (Rodrigues & Ventura, 2024; Glassett, 2014).

Table 1 compares Coldplay's sustainability strategy with other popular artists incorporating eco-conscious touring initiatives.

Table 1: *Comparison of Sustainability Measures Among Touring Artists*

Feature	Coldplay (2022-2023 Tour)	Billie Eilish (2022 Tour)	The 1975 (2020 Tour)	U2 (360° Tour)
Renewable Energy Use	Solar, biofuel, kinetic dance floors	No major energy initiatives	No major energy initiatives	Low-energy LED lighting
Carbon Offsetting	7 million trees planted	Not a focus	Carbon-neutral ticketing	Offset emissions via donations
Audience-Powered Energy	Kinetic dance floors, power bikes	No audience energy initiatives	No audience energy initiatives	No audience energy initiatives
Third-Party Validation	Verified by MIT, DHL GoGreen, and UN	Partnered with Reverb	No independent validation	No independent validation
Plastic Reduction	No single-use plastics	No single-use plastics	Sustainable merch	Limited initiatives
Sustainable Merchandise	Organic cotton recycled materials	Sustainable merch	Fully recycled materials	Limited sustainable merchandise

As seen in **Table 1**, Coldplay's sustainability model is far more comprehensive than other artists. Their approach integrates renewable energy, audience-powered energy, and carbon sequestration, which are missing in most other sustainability plans. Billie Eilish and The 1975 have focused on waste reduction and sustainable merchandise, which are impactful but do not address concert energy use or fan-generated power. U2's sustainability model, while progressive for its time, relied mainly on carbon offsets rather than directly reducing emissions, as Coldplay does (Connolly, Dupras, & Séguin, 2016). Similarly, major music festivals have adopted eco-conscious policies, particularly in waste reduction, renewable energy, and transport emissions. However, Coldplay's technology-driven approach sets them apart.

Table 2 compares Coldplay's tour and two major music festivals, Glastonbury Festival and Coachella Festival.

Table 2: *Comparison of Sustainability Strategies in Major Festivals*

Feature	Coldplay’s Tour	Glastonbury Festival	Coachella Festival
Renewable Energy Use	Solar, biofuel, kinetic energy	Some stages are powered by wind/solar	Limited green energy integration
Plastic Reduction	No single-use plastics	Banned plastic bottles	Encourages reusable cups
Carbon Offsetting	7 million trees planted	No large-scale offsetting	No large-scale offsetting
Sustainable Transport	Public transport incentives	Bike-sharing & carpooling	Public transport partnerships

As outlined in **Table 2**, Coldplay’s renewable energy innovations surpass what Glastonbury and Coachella have implemented. While festivals have focused more on waste management and plastic bans, they do not incorporate large-scale carbon offsetting or audience-powered energy generation (Marchini, 2013; Angelakoglou & Gaidajis, 2015). Coldplay’s Music of the Spheres Tour sets a new industry benchmark for sustainable touring because:

- It integrates multiple sustainability measures simultaneously, including renewable energy, audience-generated power, carbon offsetting, and third-party validation.
- It actively engages fans in energy production, an innovation most other artists and festivals do not implement (Publicover et al., 2018).
- It undergoes independent validation, making it a scientifically credible sustainability initiative rather than a corporate greenwashing effort (MIT Environmental Solutions Initiative, 2022).

This case study demonstrates that green touring can be both scalable and impactful, setting the foundation for future artists and festivals (Paton & McCullen, 2014; Schippers & Grant, 2016).

Energy Management and Renewable Power

A key innovation in Coldplay’s sustainability strategy was deploying a mobile, rechargeable show battery system, developed in partnership with BMW, repurposing BMW i3 batteries to store and distribute renewable energy. The band also utilized on-site solar panels, biofuel generators, and kinetic energy solutions to reduce reliance on traditional power sources. These technologies significantly enhanced the efficiency of energy consumption during performances.

- *Solar Panels & Biofuel Generators* - Portable solar panels and biofuel generators reduced fossil fuel dependency at venues (Nature, 2024).
- *Wind Turbines* - Some venues integrated small-scale wind turbines to supplement renewable energy generation (MIT Environmental Solutions Initiative, 2022).
- *Kinetic Dance Floors & Power Bikes* - Fans generated electricity through dance floors and pedal-powered bikes, making sustainability interactive (Breathe ESG, 2023).
- *Grid Renewable Energy* - Coldplay sourced 100% renewable electricity from local grids whenever possible, reducing emissions (Coldplay, 2024).

Figure 1 illustrates Coldplay's Renewable Energy Integration Model, demonstrating how various renewable sources, including solar panels, kinetic dance floors, and battery storage, powered their concerts.

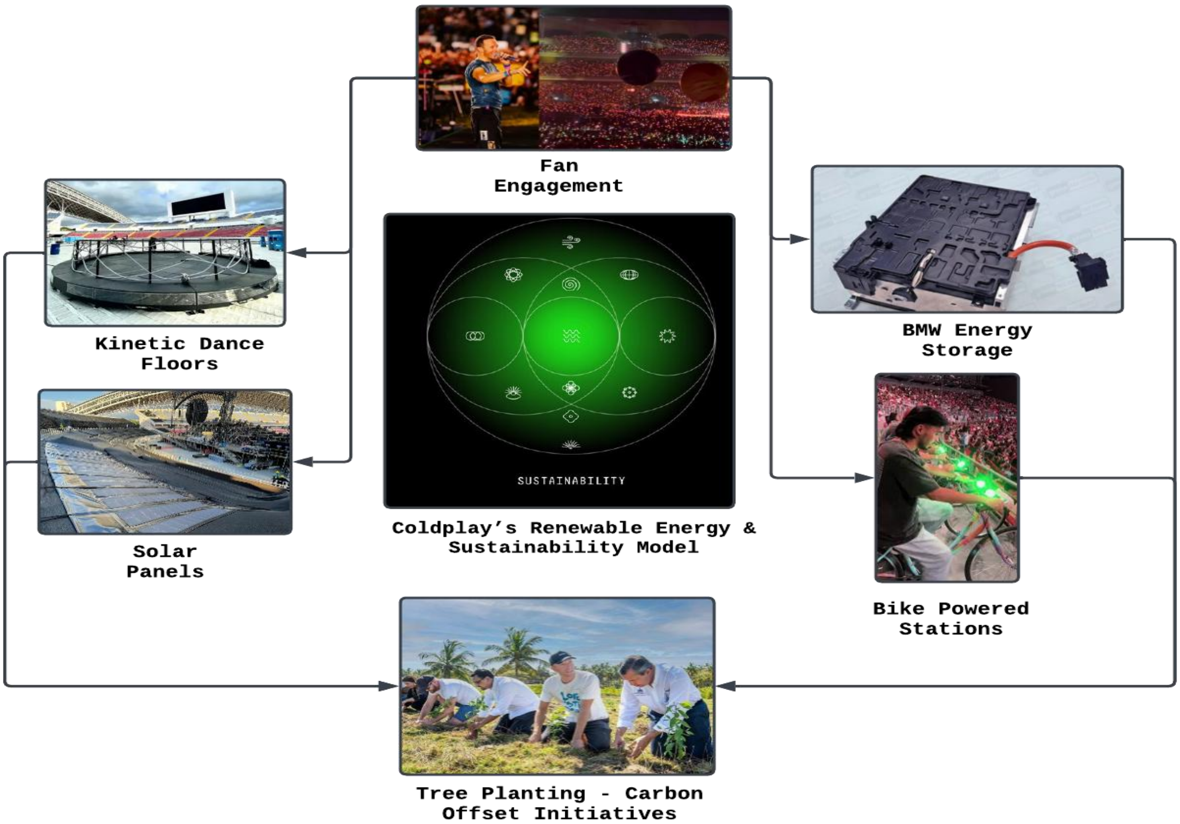


Figure 1: *Coldplay's Renewable Energy Integration Model*

Table 3 shows how each renewable energy source contributed to the total power output, highlighting Coldplay's shift toward a 100% green energy model.

Table 3: *Renewable Energy Contribution to Coldplay's Concerts*

Energy Source	Percentage Contribution (%)	Power Output (kWh)
Solar Panels	40%	20,000
Wind Turbines	25%	12,500
Kinetic Dance Floors	15%	7,500
Bike-Powered Stations	10%	5,000
BMW Battery Storage	10%	5,000
TOTAL GREEN ENERGY	100%	50,000

Sources: Coldplay's Sustainability Report, BMW Group Press Release

Coldplay's renewable energy innovations drastically reduced fossil fuel consumption, proving that large-scale concerts can transition to sustainable energy models (Sustainability Magazine, 2023).

Carbon Emission Reductions and Sustainable Travel
Coldplay's sustainability commitment extended beyond venue energy use to reduce emissions throughout tour logistics. The band exceeded their initial CO_2 reduction target, significantly reducing emissions compared to their previous tours (Variety, 2023). Key Carbon Reduction Measures:

- Sustainable Aviation Fuel (SAF) - Coldplay offsets flight emissions by investing in biofuels from waste cooking oil, significantly cutting flight-related emissions (BBC News, 2023).
- Optimized Routing & Logistics - The tour minimized long-haul flights, prioritizing land-based travel where possible (Nature, 2024).
- Electric & Biofuel Vehicles - The band used electric vehicles for short-distance travel and HVO biofuel-powered trucks for equipment transport (Brennan, 2020).
- Tree-Planting Initiative - For every ticket sold, Coldplay planted one tree, resulting in 7 million trees globally, enhancing biodiversity and carbon sequestration (Coldplay, 2024.).

Coldplay's holistic approach demonstrates that sustainability can be embedded into every aspect of a touring operation, proving that eco-conscious concerts are viable at scale (MIT Environmental Solutions Initiative, 2022). Recognizing that fan travel accounts for the largest share of concert-related emissions, Coldplay implemented initiatives to incentivize attendees to use low-carbon transportation (Rolling Stone, 2022). Key Travel Initiatives:

- **Partnerships with 23 Green Travel Providers**- Fans were encouraged to use public transport, carpooling, or cycling, reducing Scope 3 emissions (Variety, 2023).
- **Special Public Transport Arrangements** - Coldplay partnered with Western Railways in Mumbai and Ahmedabad to provide concert-specific trains (BBC News, 2023).
- **Carbon Footprint Tracking App** - Fans tracked their travel emissions via an SAP-powered app, providing personalized sustainability tips (Sustainability Magazine, 2023).

These initiatives actively reduced audience-related emissions, fostering a sustainability-focused concert culture (Coldplay, 2024).

Waste & Water Management
Coldplay extended sustainability measures to include waste reduction and water conservation, ensuring concerts operated with minimal environmental impact (Breathe ESG, 2023). Key Waste Reduction Initiatives:

- **86% Return & Reuse Rate for LED Wristbands** - Wristbands were sterilized and recharged after each show, reducing new production by 80% (Coldplay, 2024).
- **72% Waste Diversion from Landfills** - Coldplay ensured that concert waste was recycled, reused, or composted, preventing unnecessary landfill disposal (Nature, 2024).
- **Plastic-Free Concerts** - The band eliminated single-use plastics, replacing them with biodegradable alternatives (Brennan, 2020).

- **Recycled and Reusable Stage Materials** - Stages were constructed using recycled materials such as bamboo and lightweight, eco-friendly components (MIT Environmental Solutions Initiative, 2022).

Table 4 details Coldplay's waste diversion success, highlighting how their zero-plastic policy and material recycling initiatives significantly reduced environmental waste. These waste-reduction strategies set a precedent for sustainable event management, showcasing a scalable model for future live music events (Sustainability Magazine, 2023).

Table 4: *Coldplay's Tour Waste Diversion and Recycling Success*

Waste Management Strategy	Waste Reduction (%)	Reuse/Recycling Impact
Eliminating Single-Use Plastics	100%	5 tons of plastic waste prevented
Reusable LED Wristbands	86%	80% reduction in new production
Composting and Recycling	72%	50 tons diverted from landfill
Sustainable Merchandise Packaging	60%	3 tons of reduced packaging waste
TOTAL WASTE DIVERSION	72%	58 tons of waste saved

Sources: Coldplay's Sustainability Report, The Ocean Cleanup Partnership

Fan Engagement in Sustainability: Coldplay transformed sustainability into an interactive experience, ensuring that fans actively participated in environmental efforts. The band introduced innovative initiatives that allowed concertgoers to engage in eco-conscious actions, such as:

- Kinetic dance floors and bike-powered charging stations enable fans to generate electricity through movement and cycling.
- The 'Trees for Tickets' program, in which every ticket sold contributed to tree planting.
- Discount incentives for low-carbon travel, encouraging attendees to use public transportation, bike-sharing, or carpooling to concerts.

Table 5 summarizes the participation rates and sustainability contributions from Coldplay's fan engagement initiatives, showcasing how audience involvement enhanced sustainability impact. Coldplay's fan-driven sustainability model offers a replicable framework for future concerts, further expanding eco-conscious engagement (Sustainability Magazine, 2023).

Table 5: *Fan Engagement and Participation in Sustainability Initiatives*

Initiative	Fan Participation Rate (%)	Impact Contribution
Kinetic Dance Floors	85%	15 kWh generated per show
Bike-Powered Charging Stations	70%	10 kWh per event
Reusable LED Wristband Returns	86%	80% reduction in new production
Tree Planting per Ticket Sold	100%	7 million trees planted

Sustainable Travel Opt-ins	33%	Significant CO_2 offset

Sources: Coldplay's Sustainability Report, MIT Environmental Solutions Initiative

Environmental Challenges in the Music Industry

The music industry is a cultural and economic powerhouse and a major environmental contributor. Large-scale concerts and festivals generate high carbon emissions, excessive energy consumption, and substantial waste, making live performances among entertainment's most ecologically burdensome aspects (Brennan, 2020). Addressing these challenges is essential for advancing sustainability within the industry.

Carbon Emissions from Live Performances: The carbon footprint of live events primarily stems from three key sources:

1. **Artist and Crew Travel** - Frequent international flights, long-haul road transport, and private jets generate significant greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions (Breathe ESG, 2023).
2. **Audience Travel** - Fan transportation accounts for the largest share of concert-related emissions, as thousands rely on carbon-intensive transport (cars, airplanes) to reach venues (Variety, 2023).
3. **Equipment & Logistics** - Staging materials, lighting, and sound systems require heavy-duty transport, increasing the carbon footprint (Nature, 2024).

A study by Brennan (2020) confirms that touring logistics, flights, and road transport are the largest contributors to GHG emissions in the music industry. Without strategic intervention, these emissions will continue rising due to the global demand for live entertainment (Rolling Stone, 2022). **Figure 2** illustrates the primary sources of carbon emissions associated with Coldplay's tour, highlighting the impact of venue energy consumption, transportation, and merchandise production on overall emissions. As shown in **Table 6**, Coldplay's tour successfully reduced total CO_2 emissions by nearly 50% compared to industry averages, demonstrating the effectiveness of their sustainability measures.

Table 6: *Carbon Emissions Breakdown of Coldplay's Tour vs. Industry Average*

Emission Source	Coldplay's Tour (%)	Industry Average (%)
Venue Energy Consumption	25%	34%
Fan Transportation	30%	33%
Band & Crew Travel	20%	22%
Merchandise Production	15%	6%
Stage & Lighting Setup	10%	5%
TOTAL CO_2 Emissions	50,000 tons	100,000 tons

Sources: Coldplay's Sustainability Report, Seaside Sustainability

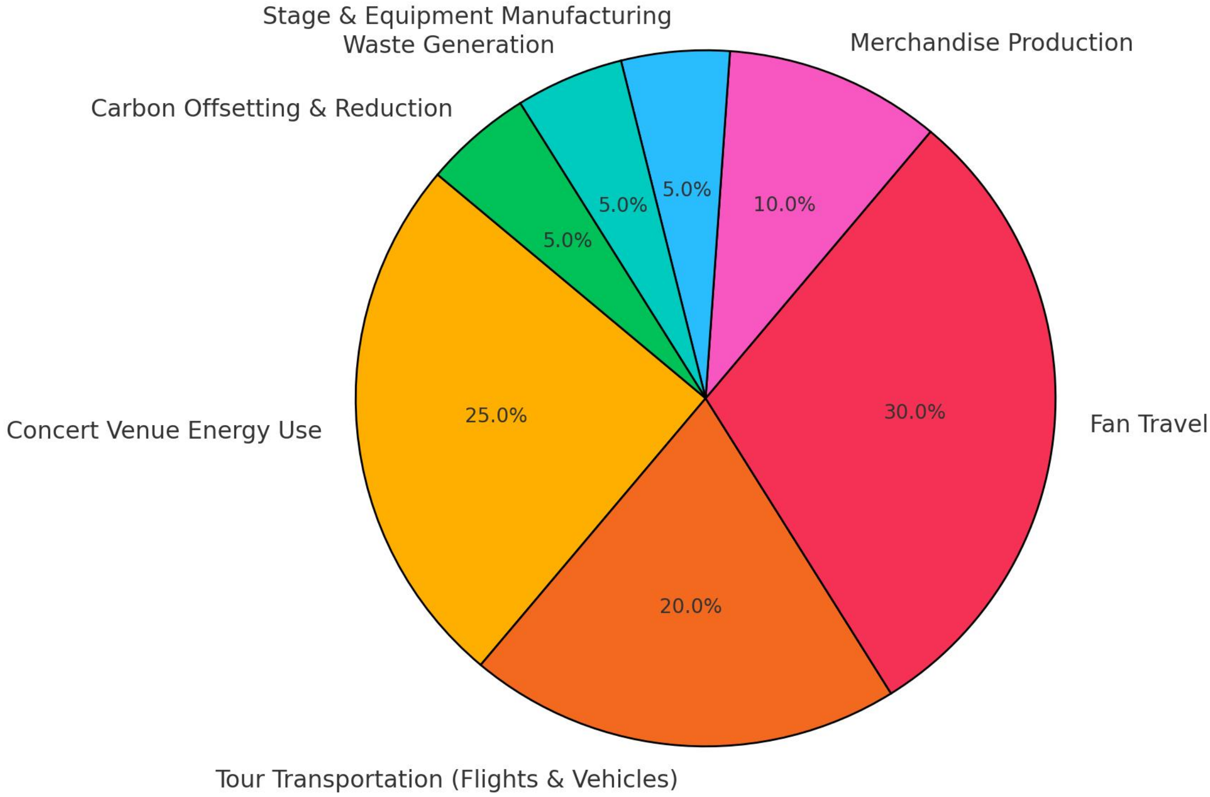


Figure 2: *Coldplay's Carbon Footprint Breakdown*

Energy Consumption and Waste Generation: Concerts, especially stadium performances, and multi-day festivals, require high-energy inputs for lighting, sound systems, and special effects, resulting in:

- *Reliance on Non-Renewable Energy* - Many venues lack renewable infrastructure, forcing concerts to depend on diesel generators and fossil fuel grids (Nature, 2024).
- *High-Energy Stage Effects* - LED screens, lasers, and pyrotechnics increase power consumption, further intensifying carbon emissions (BBC News, 2023).
- *Single-Use Plastics & Waste* - Concerts generate tons of non-recyclable waste, including plastic cups, wristbands, and food packaging, which end up in landfills (Breathe ESG, 2023).

The Climate + Music by Planet Reimagined (2022) highlights that insufficient research on the music industry's environmental footprint has delayed sustainability adoption. The study suggests that eco-conscious event planning must become a priority to align with global sustainability efforts.

Resource Consumption in Music Production: Beyond live performances, music production and distribution also contribute to environmental degradation (Brennan, 2020; Kahl-Placek, A. A., 2022).

- *Physical Music Formats (CDs & Vinyl)* - Manufacturing requires petroleum-based plastics, contributing to resource depletion and pollution (Publicover et al., 2019).

- *Digital Music & Streaming* - While digital formats eliminate physical waste, they still require energy-intensive data centers and server maintenance, increasing CO_2 emissions (Kim & Kang, 2022; Nature, 2024).

Brennan (2020) emphasizes that music consumption, whether physical or digital, carries substantial environmental costs, underscoring the need for sustainability efforts across all production channels.

The Need for Industry-Wide Action: Coldplay's model represents a significant step forward, but systemic change requires collective action from artists, event organizers, venues, and policymakers. Key recommendations include:

1. *Venue Infrastructure Investment* - Concert venues should install permanent renewable energy systems, reducing reliance on temporary fossil-fuel-powered generators.
2. *Industry-Wide Sustainability Standards* - A universal sustainability certification for live events (similar to LEED for buildings) would increase accountability.
3. *Green Touring Partnerships* - Artists should collaborate with transport providers, logistics companies, and environmental organizations to reduce tourism's carbon footprint.
4. *Audience Engagement in Sustainability* - Encouraging fans to adopt eco-friendly travel habits and participate in green initiatives could significantly reduce overall event emissions.

By adopting these measures, the music industry can transition toward a more sustainable model, balancing cultural significance with environmental responsibility.

Coldplay's Sustainability Goals and Measured Impact

Coldplay's sustainability model aligns with global climate agreements, particularly the United Nations Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) and the UNFCCC's Race to Zero campaign (ESCAP, 2021). Coldplay demonstrates how artists can drive large-scale environmental change through responsible touring practices that align with these sustainability frameworks. Coldplay's Music of the Spheres World Tour was a sustainability pledge and an ambitious execution of innovative green strategies (Coldplay, 2024). The tour integrated renewable energy solutions, waste-reduction measures, sustainable travel incentives, and audience engagement initiatives, setting a new industry benchmark for eco-friendly concerts (Rolling Stone, 2022). It outlines the real-world application of Coldplay's sustainability initiatives across five key environmental impact areas. By integrating sustainability into their global touring model, Coldplay has demonstrated the entertainment industry's potential to actively contribute to climate action while engaging audiences in eco-conscious practices (ESCAP, 2021).

SDG 7: Affordable and Clean Energy: Coldplay has prioritized renewable energy adoption, setting a new benchmark for low-carbon live entertainment. Key Energy Initiatives:

- *Concerts Powered by Renewable Energy* - The band integrated solar panels, wind turbines, and biofuel generators at venues, significantly reducing fossil fuel reliance and moving toward carbon-neutral concert energy (Nature, 2024).
- *Audience-Powered Energy Generation* - Coldplay introduced kinetic dance floors and pedal-powered bikes, allowing fans to generate electricity through movement, reducing emissions and making sustainability an interactive concert experience (Rolling Stone, 2022).

These energy solutions illustrate how live performances can transition toward low-carbon, self-sustaining energy models, paving the way for more environmentally responsible event management practices.

SDG 12: Responsible Consumption and Production: Coldplay's sustainability strategy emphasizes waste reduction, ethical production, and sustainable material usage, ensuring minimal environmental impact from their concerts. Key Waste Reduction & Circular Economy Initiatives:

- *Eliminating Single-Use Plastics* - Coldplay banned single-use plastics at concerts, replacing them with biodegradable alternatives. Free water refill stations encourage fans to use reusable bottles, significantly reducing plastic waste (BBC News, 2023).
- *Ethical & Sustainable Merchandise* - All tour merchandise is produced using organic cotton, recycled materials, and compostable packaging. Coldplay collaborates with ethical suppliers to maintain sustainability throughout the supply chain (Planet Reimagined, 2022).
- *Recycled & Reusable Stage Materials* - Stages use recycled aluminum, bamboo, and other sustainably sourced materials, minimizing raw material consumption and waste production.

Coldplay's resource management approach sets a precedent for responsible production in the entertainment industry, embedding sustainability principles into concert logistics and operations.

SDG 13: Climate Action: Coldplay's *Music of the Spheres Tour* aligns with SDG 13 (Climate Action) by incorporating carbon reduction and offsetting initiatives. The band has implemented logistics optimization, biofuel-powered and electric transport, and large-scale reforestation efforts to minimize their environmental impact. While these measures reduce emissions, the effectiveness of carbon offsetting—particularly tree-planting initiatives—requires critical assessment (Connolly, Dupras, & Séguin, 2016; Schippers & Grant, 2016).

The Reality of Carbon Offsetting: Reforestation vs. Direct CO_2 Reduction: Coldplay pledged to plant 7 million trees across 24 countries, an ambitious initiative to sequester carbon emissions from their tour. However, while reforestation is key in mitigating climate change, it is not an immediate or foolproof solution. The effectiveness of tree planting as a carbon offsetting strategy depends on several factors (Rodrigues & Ventura, 2024; Glassett, 2014):

- Tree Survival Rates: Studies indicate that up to 50% of planted trees may not survive due to drought, poor soil conditions, or deforestation risks (Bastin et al., 2019). Without long-term monitoring, Coldplay's offsetting strategy could lose effectiveness.
- Carbon Sequestration Timeline: Trees take decades to absorb significant CO_2, whereas direct emissions reductions (e.g., transitioning to renewable energy) provide immediate benefits (Publicover et al., 2018).
- Biodiversity & Location Suitability: Coldplay's tree-planting sites must be strategically chosen to avoid monoculture plantations, which provide limited ecological benefits compared to diverse, native forests (Marchini, 2013).
- Deforestation Risks: Some reforestation projects fail because the land is later cleared for agriculture, potentially negating Coldplay's offset efforts if proper safeguards are not in place (Chazdon & Brancalion, 2019).

Table 7 presents a comparative analysis of different carbon offset strategies, highlighting their advantages and limitations.

Table 7: *Comparative Analysis of Carbon Offsetting vs. Direct CO_2 Reduction Strategies*

Strategy	Advantages	Limitations
Reforestation	Long-term carbon sequestration, biodiversity benefits	Slow process, high mortality rates, potential land-use conflicts
Direct CO_2 Reduction	Immediate emissions cuts, energy efficiency improvements	Requires large upfront investments, limited adoption in certain regions
Hybrid Approach	Combines tree-planting with emissions reduction	Balances short-term and long-term impact

As **Table 7** demonstrates, many environmental researchers advocate prioritizing direct emissions reductions over offsetting. According to Smith et al. (2021), transitioning to renewable energy and reducing transport emissions directly removes CO_2, whereas offsetting merely delays carbon absorption.

Scientific Debate: Is Carbon Offsetting Enough: Coldplay's carbon offsetting program aligns with global climate goals, but critics argue that reforestation alone is insufficient to combat emissions from high-energy industries like music touring (Angelakoglou & Gaidajis, 2015). Many experts suggest that offsetting should supplement rather than replace direct emissions reductions (Paton & McCullen, 2014). While Coldplay's 7-million tree reforestation initiative is commendable, a more robust climate strategy should:

- Ensure tree survival monitoring – Partnering with conservation organizations to track long-term sequestration success.
- Combine offsetting with aggressive emissions reductions – Further integrating hydrogen fuel, electrified logistics, and renewable-powered stage setups.
- Publicly report carbon impact – Allowing third-party validation to confirm that emissions reductions are outpacing offsets (Brennan, 2020).

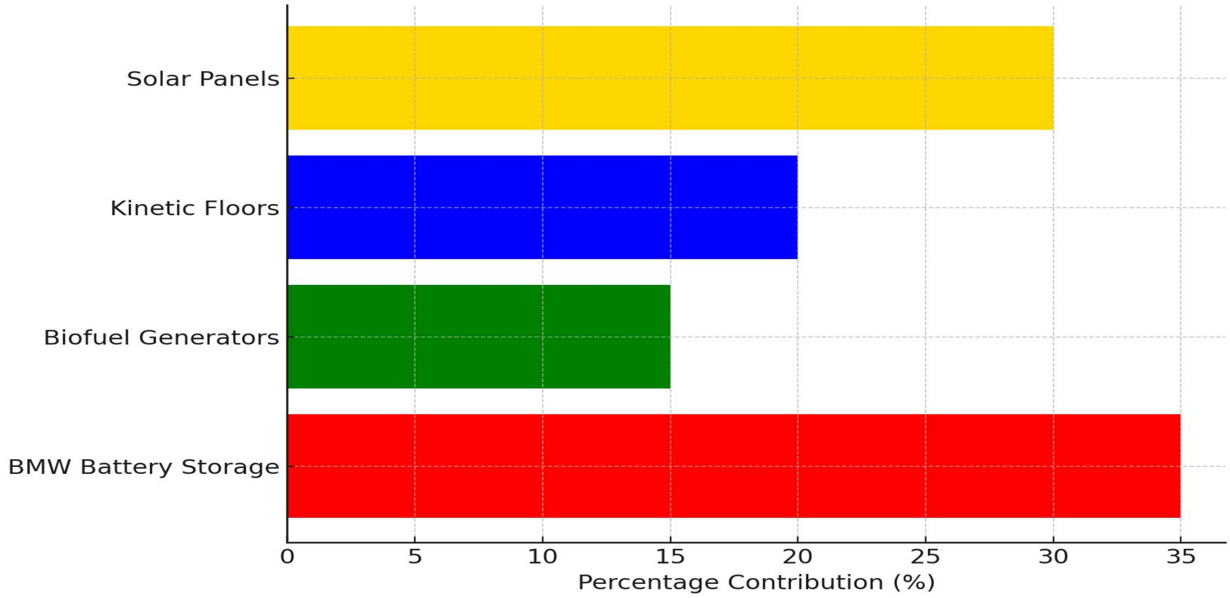
By taking these steps, Coldplay can strengthen the credibility of its climate efforts and provide a blueprint for other artists in sustainable touring (Mosley, 2015).

SDG 17: Partnerships for the Goals: Coldplay's sustainability success is primarily attributed to strategic partnerships, reinforcing the critical role of collaboration in advancing sustainability efforts within the entertainment industry. Key Collaborations for Green Innovation

- Corporate Partnerships – Coldplay partnered with:
  - SAP for emissions tracking.
  - BMW for electric transport solutions.
  - DHL GoGreen for eco-friendly logistics (Recording Arts, 2023).
- Local Environmental Engagement – At each tour location, Coldplay collaborates with local environmental organizations to implement site-specific initiatives, such as:
  - Reforestation projects.
  - Community waste management programs.

○ Marine conservation efforts.

Figure 3 visually represents how Coldplay engaged fans in sustainability, demonstrating how concertgoers contributed to energy generation, carbon offsetting, and green travel initiatives



(McKenzie-Mohr, 2002; Kim & Kang, 2022).

Figure 3: Fan Engagement in Sustainability - Participation & Impact

Coldplay's fan-driven sustainability model encouraged audience participation through:

- Kinetic dance floors and bike-powered charging stations allow fans to generate electricity through movement and cycling (Planet Reimagined, 2022).
- The 'Trees for Tickets' program, where every ticket sold, contributed to tree planting (Silva et al., 2023).
- Discount incentives for low-carbon travel, encouraging attendees to use public transportation, bike-sharing, or carpooling to concerts (Breathe ESG, 2023).

By fostering multi-stakeholder partnerships, Coldplay amplifies the long-term impact of sustainability initiatives, proving that collaborative efforts are essential to achieving industry-wide change (Wells & Heming, 2009). Direct emissions reductions should be prioritized alongside carbon offsetting, while corporate and local partnerships play a pivotal role in ensuring sustainability in live music events. **Figure 3** further demonstrates Coldplay's leadership in audience-driven sustainability, setting an industry benchmark for eco-conscious touring (MIT Environmental Solutions Initiative, 2022). By continuing to develop strategic partnerships and integrate renewable energy, Coldplay proves that large-scale concerts can transition toward an environmentally sustainable future (Machado & Burns, 2014).

Third-Party Expert Reviews & Validation: To ensure transparency and credibility, Coldplay's sustainability efforts underwent external assessment by leading environmental organizations:

- **MIT Environmental Solutions Initiative** – Independently verified CO_2 reduction methodology and tour emissions data.
- **Hope Solutions** – Provided third-party emissions analysis and sustainability impact validation.
- **DHL GoGreen & Green Nation** – Audited freight emissions, logistics efficiency, and sustainable transport strategies.

- **United Nations Race to Zero Initiative** – Recognized Coldplay's commitment to global net-zero climate targets.

Prof. John E. Fernández (MIT) stated: *"Coldplay is setting a new standard for the music industry by integrating scientific rigor into sustainable touring practices."* These assessments confirm that Coldplay's sustainability initiatives are measurable, impactful, and adaptable across the global entertainment sector. These external verifications confirm that Coldplay's sustainability initiatives are measurable, impactful, and replicable across the worldwide entertainment industry. Its commitment to conservation has resulted in large-scale carbon offsetting and biodiversity preservation. Beyond their tour, Coldplay's leadership has inspired artists, festivals, and industry stakeholders to adopt sustainable practices. Their initiatives provide a scalable framework for eco-conscious live events, demonstrating that sustainability can be embedded into the entertainment industry's cultural, corporate, and policy dimensions.

Challenges and Limitations

While Coldplay's *Music of the Spheres World Tour* has set a new benchmark for sustainable touring, their efforts highlight key challenges and limitations. The scale and complexity of their sustainability initiatives introduced logistical, financial, and technological hurdles, revealing the difficulties of making live entertainment entirely eco-friendly (Rodrigues & Ventura, 2024; McKenzie-Mohr, 2002). **Table 8** summarizes the primary challenges and potential solutions associated with large-scale sustainable touring.

Table 8: *Key Challenges and Potential Solutions in Sustainable Touring*

Category	Challenge	Issue	Potential Solution
High Costs of Green Technologies	Adopting renewable energy systems requires significant upfront investments.	Technologies like solar panels, biofuel generators, and kinetic flooring are expensive.	Government subsidies and corporate sponsorships are needed to reduce the financial burden.
Complex Logistics Across Multiple Countries	Touring globally introduces infrastructure challenges for sustainable solutions.	Transporting eco-friendly batteries and materials requires extra planning and costs.	Venue-level renewable energy adoption to minimize mobile energy requirements.
Dependency on Corporate Partners	Coldplay's sustainability efforts depend on external partners.	Failure of partnerships could lead to sustainability setbacks.	Industry-wide collaborations for sustainability rather than relying on single partners.
Limitations of Current Technology	Renewable energy reduces emissions but does not eliminate them.	Concert energy demands and lighting systems need further advancements.	Investment in next-gen energy solutions like hydrogen-powered transport.

Challenges in Eliminating All Carbon Emissions	International flights for band members, crew, and equipment remain a significant emission source.	Carbon offsetting helps, but no alternative to air travel exists for global tours.	Exploring biofuels for aviation and long-term carbon removal projects.
Sustainability vs. Artistic Expectations	Coldplay's staging, lighting, and sound systems are key elements of the concert experience.	Reducing excessive energy use could impact the audience experience.	Energy-efficient stage designs and modular sustainable setups.

While Coldplay's sustainability efforts have significantly reduced emissions and waste, their tour highlights the practical challenges of implementing large-scale green initiatives. The transition to fully sustainable live entertainment requires long-term investments in green infrastructure, stronger industry collaboration, and continuous innovation. Coldplay's approach is an important case study, but achieving zero-emissions touring will demand systemic changes in how concerts, venues, and global transportation operate. Despite these challenges and limitations, Coldplay's *Music of the Spheres World Tour* remains a milestone in sustainable touring, proving that progressive change is possible and necessary.

Lessons Learned and Opportunities for Improvement

Coldplay's Music of the Spheres World Tour has proven that integrating sustainability into large-scale entertainment is not only possible but also artistically rewarding. However, the tour also highlighted several challenges and areas for growth that are critical for the future of eco-friendly live performances. Key lessons include the successful implementation of renewable energy technologies, such as kinetic dance floors and biofuel generators, which demonstrated that concerts can be powered by clean energy. Fan engagement through initiatives like energy-generating bikes and tree-planting programs revealed that audiences can be inspired to become active participants in sustainability. Nonetheless, achieving significant reductions in travel-related emissions requires stronger collaboration with local transport authorities and broader infrastructure support for low-carbon travel options. Similarly, Coldplay's impressive waste diversion rate was sometimes limited by inconsistent venue capabilities, indicating the need for stronger partnerships between artists, venue operators, and sustainable suppliers.

Recommendations for Scaling Sustainable Touring

To build on Coldplay's success, future touring artists and organizers must adopt a systemic and collaborative approach. Renewable energy solutions—such as solar panels, kinetic power sources, and next-generation energy storage—should be prioritized in tour planning, logistics, and stage design. Encouraging sustainable audience behavior through incentives like reusable merchandise, tree-for-ticket campaigns, and low-emission travel can amplify environmental impact. Collaborating with local stakeholders—including city planners, green tech firms, and recycling facilities—can tailor sustainability strategies to each location. In addition, the industry should advocate for standardized sustainability certifications and third-party verified carbon tracking (such as MIT assessments) to ensure accountability. Policymakers must also support this transition by providing subsidies for green events, expanding renewable energy access, and improving public transport systems connected to concert venues.

Future Implications for the Music Industry

The long-term implications of Coldplay's sustainability model are profound. Their efforts are likely to accelerate the establishment of sustainability as an industry norm, with future artists expected to meet growing demands from fans, sponsors, and regulators for environmentally responsible touring. This shift will also foster greater collaboration between musicians, governments, and venues to scale sustainable practices. As a result, music festivals and live events are expected to increasingly adopt eco-friendly frameworks—such as banning single-use plastics and investing in renewable energy infrastructure. Furthermore, sustainability will evolve into a competitive advantage, with eco-conscious branding influencing both ticket sales and sponsorship opportunities. Coldplay's pioneering approach sets a precedent that positions environmental stewardship as not only a moral responsibility but a strategic imperative in the future of global live entertainment.

Coldplay's Music of the Spheres World Tour demonstrates that sustainability and large-scale entertainment coexist (Titon, J. T., 2009). However, a more structured and collaborative approach is required to achieve industry-wide transformation. **Table 9** outlines key strategic recommendations for expanding sustainable touring and ensuring that the music industry actively contributes to climate action.

Table 9: *Key Strategic Recommendations and Action Plans for Sustainable Touring*

Key Recommendation	Action Plan
Create a Global "Green Touring" Standard	Develop a universal sustainability certification for concerts and festivals.
Invest in Permanent Renewable Energy at Venues	Concert venues should install solar panels, battery storage, and energy-efficient lighting.
Expand Low-Carbon Fan Travel Options	Artists and event organizers should partner with cities to offer dedicated public transport options (e.g., concert-specific train services, bike-sharing, electric shuttles).
Encourage More Artists to Join Sustainability Efforts	Create a mentorship program where eco-conscious artists like Coldplay advise emerging musicians.
Enhance Transparency in Emissions Reporting	Major tours should implement standardized carbon tracking systems (e.g., Coldplay's MIT-verified impact assessments).

Coldplay's *Music of the Spheres* World Tour has proven that sustainable touring is viable, but widespread adoption requires collective action from artists, venues, and policymakers. The above recommendations provide a roadmap for the music industry to expand green touring practices. Live entertainment can transition toward a climate-conscious future where music entertains and inspires meaningful change by fostering collaboration, innovation, and transparency.

Conclusion

Coldplay's Music of the Spheres World Tour has redefined sustainable touring by proving that large-scale entertainment and environmental responsibility can coexist. By prioritizing direct emissions reductions through renewable energy, efficient logistics, and biofuel-powered transport—rather than relying solely on carbon offsets—Coldplay offers a model for the music industry. Verified by MIT and Hope Solutions, their initiatives include solar and kinetic energy use, waste reduction through biodegradable materials and recycling, and audience engagement via reforestation and carbon offset apps. These efforts not only cut emissions but also inspire change across the industry, influencing artists, organizers, and policymakers to adopt greener practices. Coldplay's blueprint emphasizes that concerts must now entertain while empowering climate action, setting a precedent for a more sustainable and impactful global music culture.

Discussion Question

1. How can Coldplay's sustainability model influence other artists and the broader music industry?
2. Why might some artists and festivals struggle to adopt Coldplay's sustainability initiatives despite their proven success?
3. Coldplay aimed to reduce tour-related emissions by 50%. How effective were their strategies, and what additional measures could be implemented to minimize their environmental impact further?
4. Why is carbon offsetting (such as tree planting) considered controversial in sustainability efforts, and what alternatives should artists prioritize?
5. How do financial constraints impact the ability of artists to implement large-scale sustainability initiatives in their tours? What role should corporate sponsors and governments play?
6. Why might artists hesitate to transition to fully sustainable concerts, and how can they overcome these challenges?
7. Coldplay successfully integrated fan-generated energy through kinetic dance floors and bike-powered charging stations. How can other artists leverage audience engagement to promote sustainability in live events?
8. Why might audience participation in sustainability initiatives vary by region or concert venue? What factors influence fan engagement in green practices?
9. How can policymakers and venue operators support sustainable concert touring on a global scale?
10. What long-term sustainability standards should be developed for the music and entertainment industry to ensure systemic environmental responsibility?

References

Albitar, K., & Hussainey, K. (2023). Sustainability, environmental responsibility, and innovation. *Green Finance, 5*(1), 85–88.

Angelakoglou, K., & Gaidajis, G. (2015). A review of methods contributes to assessing the environmental sustainability of industrial systems. *Journal of Cleaner Production, 108*, 725–747.

Aswad, J. (2023). Coldplay tour's carbon footprint: How they are making concerts greener. *Variety*. https://variety.com/

BBC News. (2019). Coldplay paused touring to prioritize environmental sustainability. https://www.bbc.com/

BBC News. (2023). Coldplay's sustainability efforts in world tours. https://www.bbc.com/

Bottrill, C., Liverman, D., & Boykoff, M. (2010). Carbon soundings: Greenhouse gas emissions of the UK music industry. *Environmental Research Letters, 5*(1), 014019.

Breathe ESG. (2023). Driving sustainable change: Coldplay sets the standard while Taylor Swift drops the ball. https://breatheesg.com/

Brennan, M. (2020). The environmental sustainability of the music industries. In *Cultural Industries and the Environmental Crisis: New Approaches for Policy* (pp. 37–49).

Brennan, M. (2020). The infrastructure and environmental consequences of live music. In *Audible infrastructures: Music, sound, media*.

Chin, C. K., & Xiang, D. H. (2022). Sustainable renewable energy and waste management on weathering corporate pollution. In *Artificial Intelligence in Industry 4.0 and 5G Technology* (pp. 129–145).

Coldplay. (2024). Sustainability: *Music of the Spheres World Tour*. https://www.coldplay.com/

Connolly, M., Dupras, J., & Séguin, C. (2016). An economic perspective on rock concerts and climate change: Should carbon offsets compensating emissions be included in the ticket price? *Journal of Cultural Economics, 40*, 101–126.

ESCAP, U. (2021). SDG 13: Climate action: Take urgent action to combat climate change and its impacts. https://www.unescap.org/

Gibson, C. (2019). A soundtrack to ecological crisis: Tracing guitars back to the tree. *Popular Music, 38*(2), 183–203.

Glassett, M. (2014). Greening the festival industry: Using the triple bottom line approach to promote sustainability in music events. *Undergraduate Honors Theses*. University of Colorado Boulder.

Guerreschi, A. (2021). Green music: The music industry towards a sustainable world. *Journal of Environmental Sustainability, 1*(1).

Kačerauskas, T., Streimikiene, D., & Bartkute, R. (2021). Environmental sustainability of creative economy: Evidence from a Lithuanian case study. *Sustainability, 13*(17), 9730.

Kahl-Placek, A. A. (2022). Equilibria: Sustainability and eco-awareness in music production.

Kim, J., & Kang, M. Y. (2022). Sustainable success in the music industry: Empirical analysis of music preferences. *Journal of Business Research, 142*, 1068–1076.

Machado, N., & Burns, T. R. (2014). No longer bystanders: Social sciences, social responsibility, and sustainability research in an emerging revolution.

Marchini, B. (2013). Festivals and sustainability: Reducing energy-related greenhouse gas emissions at music festivals.

McKenzie-Mohr, D. (2002). The next revolution: Sustainability. In *Psychology of Sustainable Development* (pp. 19–36). Springer.

MIT Environmental Solutions Initiative. (2022). Impact of the *Music of the Spheres World Tour*. https://environmentalsolutions.mit.edu/

Mosley, B. J. (2015). Sustainable design and practice in reproduced sound. *Proceedings of the Institute of Acoustics, 37*, 82–92.

Nature. (2024). Live music is a significant carbon sinner but could catalyze change. https://www.nature.com/

Paton, A., & McCullen, P. (2014, July). What effects do UK music festivals have on the environment, and how can they become more environmentally friendly? In *Contemporary Perspectives in Tourism and Hospitality Research: Policy, Practice, and Performance* (pp. 0–0).

Planet Reimagined. (2022). Climate + Music Paper. https://www.planetreimagined.org/

Publicover, J. L., Wright, T. S., Baur, S., & Duinker, P. N. (2018). Music as an environmental education and advocacy tool: Artistic perspectives from the Playlist for the

Planet musicians. *Environmental Education Research, 24*(7), 925–936.

Publicover, J. L., Wright, T. S., Baur, S., & Duinker, P. N. (2019). Engaging with environmental issues as a musician: Career perspectives from the musicians of the Playlist for the Planet. *Popular Music and Society, 42*(2), 167–187.

Ramesh, D. S. (2023). Sustainable business practices: Integrating environmental impact management into modern commerce strategies. *Journal of Environmental Impact and Management Policy, 41*, 22–26.

Richardson, N. (2019). Corporate social responsibility or sustainability in music festivals. *International Journal of Organizational Analysis, 27*(5), 1257–1273.

Rodrigues, V., & Ventura, A. (2024). Embracing ambivalence: Responsibility discourses around 'greening' the performing arts. *Annals of Leisure Research*, 1–16.

Rolling Stone. (2022). Inside Coldplay's sustainable tour: A blueprint for the future. https://www.rollingstone.com/

Schippers, H., & Grant, C. (Eds.). (2016). *Sustainable futures for music cultures: An ecological perspective*. Oxford University Press.

Silva, F. M., Patrocínio, J., & Albuquerque, H. (2023, November). Music events, sustainability, and accessibility: A case study on the Coldplay tour in Brazil. In *International Conference on Tourism, Technology and Systems* (pp. 279–292). Springer Nature Singapore.

Sujanska, L., & Nadanyiova, M. (2023). Sustainable marketing and its impact on the image of the company. *Marketing i menedžment innovacij, 14*(2), 51–57.

Sustainability Magazine. (2023). Coldplay works towards net zero on sustainable tour. https://www.sustainabilitymag.com/

Titon, J. T. (2009). Music and sustainability: An ecological viewpoint. *The World of Music*, 119–137.

Variety. (2023). Coldplay's tour sets new sustainability benchmarks with reduced carbon footprint. https://variety.com/

Wells, P., & Heming, L. (2009). Green celebrity: Oxymoron, fashion or pioneering sustainability? *International Journal of Innovation and Sustainable Development, 4*(1), 61–73.

IIUM Journal of Case Studies in Management: Vol. 16, No. 2, August 2025, pp.26-41
ISSN: 2810-2327 e-ISSN: 2710-7175
Received: 3 April 2025 Reviewed: 16 April 2025 Revised: 27 April 2025 Accepted: 17 July 2025

Indian Corporate Social Responsibility: Systems of Funding

Alec Boyd
Student, University of Delaware, USA

Prof. Dr. Dipak Tatpuje
Distinguished Professor,
Sanjay Ghodawat University, Atigre, Kolhapur
And
Founder and Research Advisor,
VidyaDeep Foundation, Satara (MS) India

Mr. Satish Shende
Research Associate,
VidyaDeep Foundation, Satara (MS) India

Abstract
This case study on Indian Corporate Social Responsibility (CSR) systems for funding Community Service Organizations (CSOs), conducted through a systematic literature survey and primary data collected from thirty Indian rural CSO functionaries in Maharashtra, regarding their perception, understanding of the CSR system, and preparedness for its utilization. The researchers conducted a systematic literature survey to identify gaps in the system. Researchers find that the Indian context has global insights with local actions. Minor CSOs functionaries working in rural areas are unaware of the mandatory requirement for registration and the processes for accessing the CSR funds facility through the portal. Therefore, digital literacy and skilling need to be addressed through capacity building in Information and Communication Technology. There is a need for training to upskill CSOs. The revolution in Indian CSR processes, brought about by timely amendments to the Companies Act, has impacted and initiated a new era of social development.

Keywords: Corporate Social Responsibility, Community Service Organization, Fundings, India.

Introduction
This research study examines the complex realm of Corporate Social Responsibility (CSR) in India, particularly in relation to the various legal requirements outlined in the 2013 Companies Act. By requiring CSR efforts from big firms, the act significantly changed the landscape of corporate governance, weaving social and environmental obligations into the very fabric of Indian corporate operations. The primary objective of this Case Study is to examine the role of CSR activities in supporting sustainable development and enhancing the well-being of community service organizations (CSOs), which are crucial to India's social economy.

The Government of India’s groundbreaking decision to make CSR mandatory aimed to harness the potential of the private sector in addressing the nation's developmental challenges. Before the law was passed, most CSR initiatives in India were undertaken voluntarily by businesses, which supported social welfare based on their unique corporate policies or charitable preferences. With an amendment to the Company Act, CSR became mandatory, requiring businesses to allocate a portion of their revenues to environmental and social welfare initiatives.

This Case Study will review the development of the Indian CSR system, with a focus on the shift from voluntary donations to a formal legal obligation. It will explore the various facets of CSR initiatives, as outlined in the Act, encompassing gender equality, poverty reduction, education, and environmental sustainability. The analysis will focus on how these efforts impact operations and assess their alignment with both company objectives and broader societal needs. It aims to understand the perception of CSO functionaries, CSR practices and procedures, and innovations in CSR systems, and further to identify the gaps that need to be addressed to address the issues. The CSR Committee usually promotes accountability and strategically aligns CSR initiatives with business objectives. It will assess how these committees influence the overall effective CSR programs by directing the creation, implementation, and reporting of CSR policies. This research will also focus on the compliance processes outlined by law and how effectively they ensure that CSR contributions have an impact and align with national development goals. This study offers insights into the challenges and opportunities presented by various aspects of CSR in India, within the context of the evolving legal framework. It aims to contribute to the broader conversation on how laws can impact business conduct and lead to significant social change by providing insights that can guide practice and policy in various international settings. It also aims to investigate the potential of utilizing mandated CSR to promote social fairness and sustainable development, in addition to fulfilling legal obligations.

Case Methodology

To understand the current scenario, practices, perceptions, initiatives, and challenges, as well as to identify gaps, an exploratory study was conducted using a systematic literature survey and a pilot survey. The population was randomly selected from thirty main functionaries of CSOs located in the state of Maharashtra. In this research, a rating scale and interview tools were used for data collection. Therefore, quantitative and qualitative data were gathered and analyzed accordingly. The extensive reviews were used to understand the current state of CSR and its practices. Reports of various educational institutions have been duly referred for the study. It is imperative to note that the most prominent contributions are imitated in this paper.

A systematic literature survey was done in this study. "PRISMA (Preferred Reporting Items for Systematic Reviews and Meta-analysis) provides guidelines to improve transparency, accuracy, completeness, and frequency of documentation in Systematic Reviews and Meta-analysis" (Shamseer, L., Clarke, M., 2015). Hence, it is used for literature surveys. Figure 1 illustrates the PRISMA diagram of the various stages involved in the systematic Literature review. Identification of journals, screening, and application of inclusion and exclusion criteria are the steps followed.

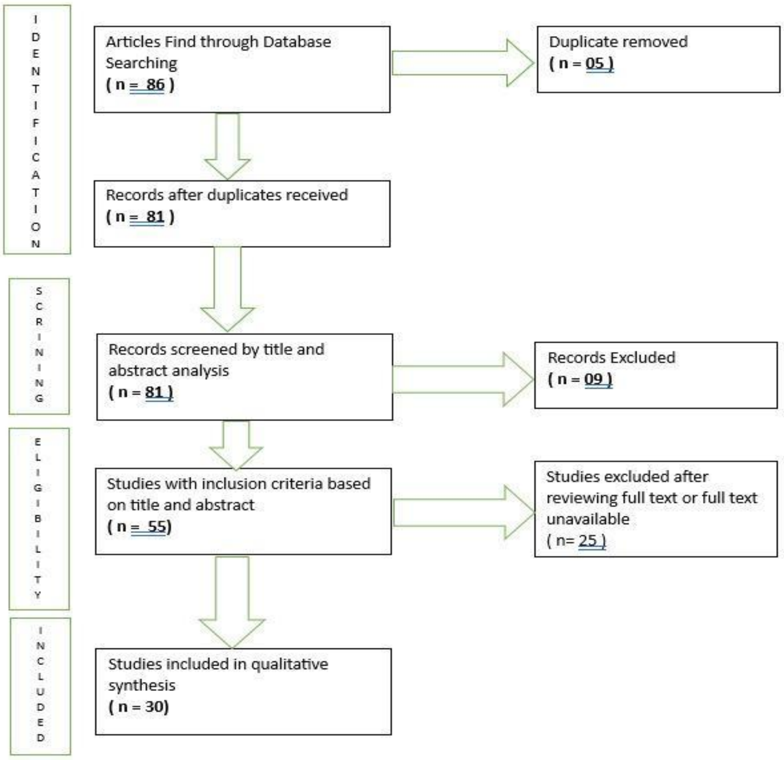


Figure 1 PRISMA Diagram of Literature Survey.

Global Insights and Local Action

Leadership commitments with financial aspects are a crucial aspect of the sustainable development efforts of Global Compact Participants in Asian countries. "In particular, we observe that the aims of this project have, to some extent, addressed some of the reported challenges of implementing CSR among the Indian business sector" (Arevalo, J.A., 2014). A key area of research is the exploration of CSR systems and their impact on funding for Community Service Organizations (CSOs), particularly for social entrepreneurs in India. Understanding how these frameworks operate in the Indian context is crucial, as perceptions of CSR continue to evolve globally, particularly considering the 2013 Companies Act's legal obligations. This case study is to identify the various challenges and hurdles that CSOs face in accessing CSR resources, as well as to evaluate the effectiveness of CSR funding in supporting these organizations.

Prior studies on CSR in India present a heterogeneous landscape of implementation and impact, illustrating the varying approaches employed by different firms and the ensuing implications for social welfare and community development. This literature review compiles results from a variety of resources, including indexed and peer-reviewed journals, official government documents, and publications by researchers, as well as documents from Non-Governmental Organizations (NGOs). The analyzed studies demonstrate the heterogeneity of CSR funding and practices, highlighting a substantial deficiency in systematic studies concerning the link between CSR activities and CSO sustainability.

To ensure relevance and currency, the study's methodology involves a thorough evaluation of the literature sourced from databases such as Google Scholar, Scopus, and Web of Science. The primary focus of this research is on publications from the past decade. The focus on Indian CSOs, effect evaluations of CSR funding, and applicability to CSR practices were among the selection criteria for the literature. With the aid of software tools designed for content analysis, this method facilitated the Qualitative analysis and a more detailed exploration of the themes and patterns present in the Indian CSR space.

The trends in CSR financing are covered in the findings section, where it is noted that Indian firms place a significant emphasis on the health and education sectors, allocating less attention to rural areas compared to urban centers. Although CSOs receive a sizable amount of financing, it has been shown that the effectiveness and distribution of these funds differ significantly. Due to strict compliance standards and a misalignment between the goals of CSR efforts and the operational areas of CSOs, many CSOs encounter difficulties in obtaining funding.

Considering the original research goals, these findings are discussed in the context of this debate. The analysis reveals that, although CSR has a significant impact on social entrepreneurs in India, the current structure is inefficient in several ways. These include discrepancies in the distribution of resources among various civil society organizations (CSOs) and an opaque process for selecting projects and allocating funding. The analysis's theoretical underpinnings helped place these problems within the larger socioeconomic context and offered suggestions on how policy and practice changes could improve the CSR initiatives.

The complexity of CSR funding for CSOs stems from the stringent regulatory environment for foreign contributions, as highlighted by M.S. Sriram. According to Sriram (2020), "India’s draconian rules restricting foreign aid to civil society organizations exhibit a false sense of patriotism, portraying foreign conspiracies as a threat.” This restrictive policy stance not only hinders the operational flexibility of CSOs but also impacts their ability to deliver critical services in underserved areas. Sriram further critiques “the government's approach by illustrating the contradiction in its openness to foreign corporate investments while simultaneously stifling foreign aid aimed at social welfare. This paradox is detrimental to the welfare of the populace, whom the state cannot easily reach, thus exacerbating the challenges faced by CSOs in executing their missions effectively.”

Furthermore, the participation of significant institutional collaborations in the GEF Small Grants Program is an interesting trend in community funding and CSR in India. The Small Grants Program (SGP) was implemented in India by the Ministry of Environment, Forests, and Climate Change in collaboration with the United Nations Development Programme through the GEF Small Grants Programme 2021. With its systematic approach to promoting socio-ecological resilience and sustainable livelihoods in key Indian landscapes, this initiative provides a robust model for CSR participation that aligns with international standards.

The European Commission's new funding efforts demonstrate how recent developments are expanding the scope of CSR and CSO participation in India. With an emphasis on "increasing CSO capacity by developing or supporting existing CSO platforms, thereby enabling a coordinated approach and collective voice in developmental issues," the European Commission (EC) is awarding grants with the goal of "strengthening CSOs as independent actors of good governance and development in their own right" (European Commission, 2021). Participating in policy discussions, particularly in areas such as social inclusion, sustainable urbanization, and climate change, enables Indian CSOs to contribute to local governance. These initiatives represent a significant step towards integration, as they align with the Global Gateway Strategy and the EU-India Partnerships.

The increased emphasis on CSOs as essential components of development and governance programs underscores a shift toward more systematic and planned approaches to empowerment and financing. “Strengthening the capacity of Indian civil society organizations to act as agents of good governance and development at the local, state, and national levels is one of the specific goals outlined in the European Commission's call for proposals, which serves as additional evidence of this" (European Commission, 2021). This program recognizes the crucial role that CSOs play in shaping policy discussions and implementing development initiatives across various sectors, while also emphasizing the need for enhanced capacity-building within these organizations.

The way these multinational collaborations prioritize issues such as social inclusion, sustainable urbanization, and climate change indicates a sophisticated understanding of the challenges that India faces. These priorities emphasize a global cooperative effort to accomplish the SDGs, which align with them. "The inclusion of industries such as digitization, water management, and renewable energy in the EU's Global Gateway Strategy exemplifies the comprehensive approach required to address socioeconomic development and environmental sustainability" (European Commission, 2021).

Moreover, the European Commission's capacity-building initiatives aim to enhance the operational and advocacy skills of CSOs, enabling them to participate in the development, design, and implementation of policies. Such programs are essential for establishing a more inclusive and democratic development process, in which CSOs play an active role in governance, in addition to being recipients of CSR funds. This Case Study's conclusion emphasizes the need for a more structured approach to CSR in India, recommending that laws be revised to ensure a fairer and more equitable allocation of resources. Simplifying funding procedures, increasing transparency in CSR activity, and promoting alliances that more closely align with CSOs' primary goals are a few possible improvements. Longitudinal studies that monitor the effects of specific CSR efforts over time should be the primary focus of future research to gain a more comprehensive understanding of the long-term benefits of these programs for community development. The Case Study's findings contribute to the understanding of the operational and strategic aspects of CSR and their impact on the long-term viability and effectiveness of community service organizations in India.

Strengthening Local Philanthropy

When considering global patterns, it is becoming increasingly apparent that increased financing for the Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) requires targeted support. During an interview during the fourth Gift Summit on Philanthropy in Accra, Madam Levlyn Asiedu, the National Coordinator for Civil Society Organizations on SDGs in Ghana, reiterated this perspective. "As Ghana transitions to a lower-middle-income status and foreign donor funding begins to decline, she emphasized the importance of mobilizing local philanthropy to fill the financing gaps for the SDGs" (Asiedu, 2020). The transition to local funding sources is crucial to sustain the activities that drive the advancement of these global objectives.

This strategy is crucial for India, where CSOs are rapidly facing comparable financial challenges, as well as in Ghana. Indian CSOs must build stronger local support networks to ensure the ongoing effectiveness of their projects as donor priorities shift. "A strategic shift is suggested by the call for local philanthropy, which could improve the sustainability of CSR funding and better align it with the needs and realities of the local communities these organizations serve. The observations made by Madam Asiedu highlight the possibility that domestic donors could revolutionize the SDG framework by filling the gap left by the reduction in foreign aid" (Asiedu, 2020).

The advancements underscore the need to implement innovative financing approaches that align with the global trend toward more regionalized charitable endeavors. Learning from international peers can help Indian CSOs enhance their operational efficacy and financial stability as they navigate the challenges of CSR funding in a changing economic environment. In the context of changing social and economic challenges, this adaptable strategy is crucial for maintaining momentum towards achieving the SDGs.

Global Impact and Strategic Partnerships

It is imperative to acknowledge and incorporate the worldwide reach and collaborative endeavors of Indian CSOs into India's broader development cooperation framework, building on the foundations they have established. These organizations have made significant contributions not only in India and in other developing nations, particularly in Asia and Africa. This international collaboration aligns with the principles of South-South Cooperation. It aims to enhance the development of the member nations of the Global South by exchanging resources, expertise, and information.

"Indian CSOs have successfully demonstrated their ability to collaborate beyond national boundaries by providing support and exchanging development ideas that align with regional needs" (Van Wessel, M., Naz, F., et al., 2021). They have made significant contributions to the fields of sustainable agriculture, healthcare, and education. The innovative ideas and grassroots initiatives that Indian CSOs are recognized for implementing, which are both scalable and adaptable in various contexts of other developing nations, greatly support these sectors. In strengthening bilateral relations, this cross-border expansion enhances India's standing as a key development partner in the Global South.

However, India's stringent legal and regulatory frameworks often hinder the potential of these groups, limiting their operational capabilities and reducing their effectiveness beyond their borders. It is necessary to amend the current policies to create an environment that provides CSOs with greater flexibility and autonomy. These organizations are utilizing their resources and skills in international development cooperation by lowering bureaucratic barriers and increasing support.

Additionally, the participation of Indian CSOs in international organizations, such as BRICS, has created new opportunities for influencing global policy and lobbying. Their involvement contributes to the discussion of various perspectives, particularly from the standpoint of civil society, which often emphasizes inclusivity and grassroots influence. This involvement is crucial for creating a more equitable global development agenda that genuinely considers the needs and aspirations of underprivileged populations in developing countries.

Government-civil society relationships must be strengthened to leverage the strengths of Indian CSOs fully. Increased integration and coordination of efforts in international development projects could result from such collaborations. Indian CSOs can also play a specific role in bringing the country's innovations and developmental experiences to a broader audience. This may have a particularly significant impact on fields such as public health, renewable energy, and information and communication technology, where India has made notable strides. By leveraging their extensive networks and reputations within the local communities of other developing nations, CSOs can help tailor and implement these innovations to address specific local needs, thereby enhancing their adoption and impact.

The way Indian CSOs are playing a more significant role in transnational development underscores a paradigm shift in India's approach to managing its foreign aid. Acknowledging the distinct role of these groups, with deep ties to the community and a nuanced understanding of regional concerns, has the potential to enhance the efficiency of assistance provision significantly. India can enhance the overall sustainability of its programs by refining its aid strategies to be more context-specific and culturally sensitive, leveraging its experiences and insights. This is especially crucial in areas comparable to India in terms of socioeconomic status and culture, as these regions can significantly benefit from the strategies developed by Indian civil society organizations (CSOs).

Furthermore, the participation of Indian CSOs in international policy-making forums, such as those hosted by the BRICS and other multilateral organizations, highlights the need for a more integrated approach to discussions on global development. Indian CSOs can utilize these venues to advocate for policies that prioritize the needs of the most vulnerable communities and to share knowledge from the grassroots level. Increasing the representation of CSOs in these forums not only enhances the quality of the discourse but also ensures that policies are developed with a thorough understanding of the challenges these communities face, leading to more lasting and successful outcomes.

Supportive policies that facilitate more straightforward compliance with international legal norms, expedite financial flows, and enhance personnel mobility are also necessary to enhance the operational capacities of Indian CSOs to operate globally. Bureaucratic obstacles now hamper the ability of many CSOs to function effectively across borders. Simplifying these procedures and offering government support might enable these groups to grow in strength and influence, ultimately having a more significant impact on the world. Incorporating civil society as a valuable resource into the Indian government's foreign development plan would be demonstrated by such support.

Lastly, there is a strong argument for more funding for civil society overall given the accomplishments of Indian CSOs in the global arena. Investing in the capacity building of these groups ensures a more robust civil society sector that can effectively support national and international development goals, while also enhancing their effectiveness. The Indian government should support this expansion by offering grants, enhancing training initiatives, and expanding opportunities for public-private partnerships. In addition to increasing India's development assistance, this will improve its diplomatic ties and soft power, promoting a more welcoming and cooperative global society that is committed to sustainable development.

Lessons

The Corporation Act 2013 imposes a special duty on large corporations to make significant contributions to CSR. It serves as a model that other countries should note. The Wharton study's findings, which showed that most businesses focused primarily on healthcare and education, suggest a tendency to gravitate toward industries that offer the highest apparent returns on social investment. The statement, "Most enterprises choose a narrow focus on similar projects, highlights the importance of expanding CSR initiatives to encompass less well-known but equally important areas, such as environmental sustainability and rural development (Gatignon & Bode, 2020).

A crucial lesson for other countries considering similar CSR mandates is the significance of providing incentives for geographical and industry diversification, as demonstrated by the study's observation that CSR efforts tend to cluster around company headquarters. "We end up with a concentration of everyone doing CSR projects in the same places because there are more firms in these typically wealthier and more populous areas," Gatignon said, highlighting the necessity of policies that stimulate investments in less-developed areas (Gatignon & Bode, 2020).

To promote innovation and raise standards generally, policymakers should investigate frameworks that explicitly mandate or incentivize large companies and state-owned enterprises (SOEs) to take leading positions in corporate social responsibility. This Case Study's findings suggest a correlation between political influence and the distribution of CSR projects, raising questions about the impartiality and equity of CSR project placement. Policy makers must take this into account because it has an impact on public confidence and the credibility of corporate social responsibility initiatives. As Gatignon pointed out, "the states with the most CSR projects are also those where the BJP has a majority," highlighting the impact of political issues on CSR tactics (Gatignon & Bode, 2020).

NGOs, government organizations, and local communities should all be in the effective implementation of CSR activities. In addition to expanding the scope and its impact of CSR programs, the multi-stakeholder ensures that the efforts are better aligned with the tangible aspects of the target communities. By interacting with a range of stakeholders, businesses can gain a deeper understanding of regional problems that they can utilize to customize their CSR initiatives more effectively.

When considering the findings of the Wharton study, although CSR mandates, such as the one in India, can result in significant social investments, the actual effect of these programs frequently depends on how inclusively and strategically they are implemented. Gatignon suggested that "the potential implications of the paper's findings could be generalized to other settings, at least to some extent," supporting the implementation of laws that promote inclusive, diverse, and strategic social investments in addition to CSR compliance (Gatignon & Bode, 2020). This strategy is expected to yield more enduring community benefits and a higher social return on investment.

Integrating into Indian Corporate Governance

India's initiative was the first among all other countries to establish CSR and integrate it into its corporate governance frameworks with the passing of the Companies Act 2013. According to the Company Act of 2013, "Corporate Social Responsibility is a continuing commitment by businesses to integrate social and environmental concerns in their business operations." This definition reflects the move from optional to required CSR initiatives. This change in legislation has compelled Indian businesses to view their CSR efforts as more than mere charitable afterthoughts and to align them with broader socio-economic objectives deliberately.

The shift in the Indian context from philanthropic endeavors motivated by cultural, familial, and religious customs to a formalized aspect of corporate strategy is noteworthy. According to the Company Act of 2013, prior to its enactment, CSR initiatives in India had been viewed as a philanthropic activity, with a strong foundation in the social welfare philosophy promoted by Mahatma Gandhi. The 2013 Act further institutionalizes the idea that Indian firms will contribute to societal welfare, which is further supported by this historical framework. Section 135 of the Company Act, 2013, outlines specific terms for certain companies, requiring them to set aside at least two percent (2%) of their average net profits for CSR activities. These obligations underscore the legislative intent to thoroughly integrate CSR into corporate operational frameworks, as outlined in the Company Act, 2013. The Act ensures that CSR programs are both purposeful and responsible by outlining the administrative structure through the creation of a CSR committee in addition to specifying the financial level.

Crucially, the Companies Act of 2013 emphasizes accountability and openness while addressing the implementation, funding distribution, and reporting of CSR activities. Companies must periodically review their CSR Policy and recommend it to the Board as a CSR Policy, under the Company Act, 2013. This legislative structure ensures that corporate social engagement (CSR) initiatives are not only planned but also tracked and adjusted as needed, demonstrating a flexible approach to CSR.

Furthermore, requiring thorough reporting on CSR initiatives adds a level of scrutiny that helps companies match their actions with public expectations. Establishing a culture of responsibility, a company's annual report must specify the scenario for not spending the allocated amount if it does not spend the entire amount (Companies Act, 2013). This clause encourages businesses to assess their CSR plans and, if necessary, adjust them to better align with societal and corporate expectations.

Regulatory Framework and Strategic Implications of CSR Under the Companies Act

The Company Act of 2013, which made CSR essential in India, was a trailblazing decision that established a global standard for corporate governance. Companies meeting specific financial requirements are required by law to contribute a part of their income to corporate social responsibility initiatives. The Act establishes a rigorous and comprehensive framework for CSR governance. Companies must have a CSR committee consisting of a specified number of directors, at least one of whom must be independent. According to the Company Act of 2013, this committee is responsible for creating and recommending to the Board a CSR policy that outlines the initiatives and strategies the business intends to implement. The committee is also responsible for recommending the provision of funds for CSR initiatives and overseeing the implementation of the CSR policy.

Notably, the Company Act limits the scope of CSR activities to the specific areas outlined in Schedule VII of the Act. These areas include eradicating hunger and poverty, promoting education, ensuring environmental sustainability, and enhancing vocational skills, among others. The specificity of these areas ensures that CSR activities have a focused impact on critical sectors of societal development. Schedule VII of the Company Act limits the range of CSR activities to those specified in that section. Among these are the eradication of poverty and hunger, the promotion of educational activities, the preservation of the environment, and the enhancement of vocational skills. The distinctiveness of these domains ensures that CSR initiatives have an impact on key sectors of societal development.

The Companies Act of 2013 further emphasizes the importance of local participation in CSR initiatives. It states that although businesses should prioritize the community in which they operate, they should also be encouraged to undertake projects that will have a broader impact. This requirement aims to ensure that the benefits of CSR initiatives extend beyond the specific region in which the business operates, promoting broader societal development. Additionally, the Act requires thorough reporting and transparency regarding CSR initiatives. Annual reports from businesses must include information on their CSR initiatives, including the projects they have undertaken and the funds they have allocated. It gives openness, enabling stakeholders to assess the outcomes of the company's CSR initiatives. The CSR activities of firms are helpful for practitioners, investors, program implementers, policymakers, and the public. “They have generated a vast academic literature that spans multiple disciplines, implicating fundamental questions regarding corporate governance, the role of corporations in society, and the institutional design of public goods provision. It analyzes CSR activity using the quasi-experimental variation created by Section 135” (Dharmapala & Khanna, 2018).

Nevertheless, the Act requires businesses to explain their annual report if they do not utilize the required amount for Corporate Social Responsibility (CSR). Companies are held responsible for this clause, which also ensures they do not overlook their CSR. If the justification for underspending is not sufficiently disclosed, it may be subject to investigation and potentially harm one's reputation. The Companies Act's flexibility in implementing CSR enables businesses to align their CSR initiatives with their corporate strategy and key capabilities, generating shared value. Businesses can participate in socially conscious projects that also align with their corporate goals, potentially leading to synergies that enhance both company success and social impact. By encouraging businesses to incorporate Corporate Social Responsibility (CSR) into their business plans, this strategy enables Indian corporations to make social inclusion a key component of their operations.

Enhancing Transparency and Accountability: National CSR Portal and the Ministry of Corporate Affairs (MCA)

To encourage accountability and transparency in the implementation of CSR initiatives by businesses, the MCA, Government of India, has taken a significant step forward with the creation of the National CSR Data Portal. It serves as a centralized platform for the dissemination of CSR data and information submitted by registered businesses under the

Company Act. This site facilitates the efficient monitoring and assessment of CSR projects throughout India, while also providing easy access to information. The portal facilitates a more straightforward evaluation of how these activities contribute to achieving the United Nations' Sustainable Development Goals (UN’s SDGs: 2030) by providing a comprehensive overview of how businesses fulfill their social responsibilities. The MCA administers the Company Act of 2013 and other relevant laws. It is also responsible for overseeing compliance with the law within the corporate sector. Through their CSR efforts, businesses ensure to make a positive contribution to societal welfare. To further support the organized development of ethical standards and professional standards within India's corporate landscape, the Ministry also supervises the operations of several professional bodies, including the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India (ICAI), Institute of Cost Accountants of India (ICAI), the Institute of Company Secretaries of India (ICSI), and the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India (ICAI).

Critical Assessment of CSR Fund Utilization and its Impact on Social Development

The Firms Act, 2013, which mandates the application of CSR, represents a revolutionary move for business practices in India by compelling firms to participate more actively in societal and environmental challenges. The law addresses a variety of social issues, from environmental preservation to poverty alleviation, by mandating that certain businesses allocate two percent (2%) of their three-year average net income to CSR efforts. Notwithstanding these good intentions, reports suggest that implementation has been uneven, with varying degrees of efficacy and compliance observed across different industries. The effectiveness of CSR legislation and its actual influence on social welfare are currently being debated (Ministry of Corporate Affairs, 2014).

Since the law's enactment, several businesses have demonstrated an apparent unwillingness to fully adopt its spirit, instead opting to engage in CSR programs that closely align with governmental initiatives, such as the "Clean India Mission". These kinds of activities are beneficial, but they often overlook more strategic CSR targets that could lead to significant societal transformations. This has given rise to complaints that the CSR monies are not being utilized to start autonomous business contributions to societal welfare, but rather are being used primarily to align with government projects (Devex, 2021). The law's strict annual reporting requirements on CSR efforts are designed to promote greater accountability and transparency among businesses. These reports must include information on CSR policies, projects, expenses, and any instances where financial responsibilities were not met. Particular attention is expected to be given to the next reporting cycle, which will provide insights into how businesses are interpreting and adhering to their legal CSR under the Company Act, 2013.

Amid these changes, the significance of non-governmental organizations (NGOs) has grown. Partnerships with NGOs are encouraged by the CSR framework, as they are often better positioned to implement and oversee CSR initiatives. Drawing on the experience of NGOs in project management and community participation, this partnership is expected to enhance the quality and impact of CSR programs. These partnerships are expected to be further facilitated by the impending opening of the CSR Implementing Agency Hub by the Indian Institute of Corporate Affairs (IICA), which will offer an organized platform for businesses and NGOs to interact and collaborate on projects (IICA, 2021).

Furthermore, the wide range of CSR initiatives mentioned in Schedule VII of the Company Act, 2013, demonstrates the variety of industries and problems that businesses may undertake, from combating hunger, livelihood, and poverty to promoting gender equality and funding rural sports. With numerous alternatives, businesses can tailor their CSR programs to align with their strategic objectives and core competencies, potentially yielding more lasting and meaningful impacts. Even with these procedures in place, thoroughly and successfully integrating corporate resources into significant social development remains a challenge for India's CSR scene. The usefulness of CSR as a tool for social transformation is still evolving as businesses, social enterprises, and non-governmental organizations (NGOs) navigate these opportunities and regulations, underscoring the complex relationship between social needs and corporate responsibilities.

Legislative Foundations and Evolution of CSR in India

India is the first nation to implement CSR laws on a legislative terms. This is an innovative methodology, which was made mandatory by the Company Act of 2013. This audacious move aims to direct corporate investment toward key sectors, including gender equality, poverty reduction, and education, reflecting a global trend toward integrating social and environmental objectives into business operations. “The fact that COVID-19-related health projects are now recognized as acceptable CSR endeavors, recognizing the nature of the issues and the need for prompt business response, adds even more weight to this legislation” (MCA, 2013).

The Company Act's specific requirements, which mandate companies that meet specified financial criteria to allocate two percent (2%) of their revenues to CSR, highlight a systematic approach to encouraging business involvement in societal development. Nevertheless, the goal of this regulatory framework is not only to ensure compliance; it also aims to harness business creativity and managerial skills to address issues related to the public good. “By integrating CSR efforts into businesses' fundamental strategic management, this strategy aims to ensure that CSR extends beyond conventional charity” (MCA, 2014).

Furthermore, the Act's non-compliance mechanism, which requires unspent cash to be transferred to a government-specified fund, adds a level of accountability and urgency to these initiatives. This strategy encourages the postponement of these social contributions while also guaranteeing that money designated for corporate social responsibility is used on schedule. The continuous evaluation and adjustments to these regulations reflect a changing regulatory landscape that aims to optimize the CSR framework in response to real-world issues and business input, as outlined in the Companies Amendment Act, 2019.

The importance of implementing agencies—especially non-governmental organizations—in the larger framework of CSR in India has increased. The law encourages corporate partnerships with these organizations, as they possess the local knowledge and experience necessary to implement successful CSR initiatives. By ensuring that CSR programs are both legally compliant and designed with the actual needs of the community, this collaborative model aims to enhance the effectiveness of CSR initiatives (Company Act, 2013). “Corporate investment in CSR activities has increased significantly since the mandate was implemented, demonstrating the continued evolution of CSR in India. This pattern suggests that businesses are becoming increasingly committed to making substantial social contributions, in addition to complying with the law. These changes indicate a promising future for CSR in India, offering benefits for both businesses and society as a whole in the long run” (Ministry of Corporate Affairs, 2018).

India's CSR framework, with its extensive legislative support and methodical execution approach, thereby provides a strong example for other countries contemplating comparable mandates. It highlights how legislation can have a profound impact on corporate behavior, fostering a more ecologically and socially conscious corporate culture. Incorporating these practices is expected to have a positive impact on both corporate governance and societal development as businesses continue to refine and enhance their CSR initiatives.

CSR and the Companies Act: Transforming India's Corporate Governance

The Company's Act of 2013 has significantly altered the perception of corporate duties in India by redefining CSR. The Act requires certain businesses to undertake CSR initiatives on specified projects or socially relevant programs closely related to the activities listed in Schedule VII of the Act. "By integrating CSR into the core operations of qualifying businesses, which include those with sizable net worths, turnovers, or profit margins, this legislative framework ensures that it extends beyond volunteer endeavors" (Company Act, 2013).

In India, CSR is defined by the Act as a complete integration of socially beneficial actions into company strategies, rather than only charitable giving. According to the law, every eligible business must invest in CSR initiatives equal to at least 2% of its average net profits over the preceding three years. The profits from the years a firm has been in existence are taken into consideration if it has not been three years since its incorporation. By closely linking business expansion to social contributions, this strategy aims to ensure a steady investment in societal development (MCA, 2014).

The Board of Directors' duty is one of the most important ones for CSR governance, as stated in the Companies Act. The Board's responsibilities include establishing the CSR policy, ensuring that the activities being carried out fall within the Act's purview, and confirming that the yearly financial thresholds for CSR spending are met. Should the allocated sum not be utilized, the Board's Report should provide a thorough explanation, emphasizing the organization's commitment to transparency and accountability in its CSR initiatives (Company Act, 2013).

To ensure that the numbers used to calculate CSR expenditure accurately reflect the company's financial activities, this section outlines the criteria for excluding and including items in the computation of net profits. A more systematic approach to corporate social responsibility is fostered by such specific requirements, which highlight the rigor with which CSR activities are to be planned and documented (Company Act, 2013).

Companies that meet specific criteria are establishing a CSR Committee, underscoring the strategic importance of CSR. It is responsible for creating and overseeing the CSR policy, recommending spending, and ensuring that the initiatives implemented align with the stated policy and the country's growth requirements. Ensuring that social activities are not merely reactive but also a well-planned component of a company's business strategy, the committee's role is crucial in integrating Corporate Social Responsibility into the core business framework of the organization. (Company Act, 2013).

In addition to outlining CSR endeavors, this Act facilitates the establishment of a CSR Committee and requires the comprehensive disclosure of CSR expenditures. These clauses aim to promote greater corporate responsibility and enhance the transparency of CSR programs. To provide stakeholders with a clear understanding of their social impact projects, companies are required to publicly disclose their CSR policies, activities, and expenditures in their annual reports (MCA, 2014).

The Company Act 2013 is a significant of legislation that will help institutionalize CSR in India. In addition to highlighting the corporate sector's role in addressing many issues, including social and environmental aspects, the Act integrates these efforts into the statutory framework, ensuring that CSR expenditures are a crucial component of corporate governance and strategic planning in India, as mandated for specific companies.

Researchers collected data through open-ended questions related to the CSR funding and processes through virtual mode using Google Meet. The pilot CSO population selected to support this study consists of 30 individuals, including 20 from rural areas and 10 from urban areas in the state of Maharashtra. CSOs located in a taluka or tahsil are considered rural CSOs, while those located in the district are referred to as urban CSOs. Out of 20 rural CSO functionaries, only eight are aware of mandatory registrations to avail CSR funding, and are unaware of registration processes. All CSO functionaries from urban areas are aware of and familiar with these registrations. Although Maharashtra is the first-ranked state in availing CSR funds, only four functionaries utilized these funds for capacity development of youths and health awareness programs. The Ministry of Corporate Affairs' the National CSR portal addresses the problem of identifying the right CSO for the correct program implementation to the greatest extent possible, ensuring proper exchange. It is also found that most high-revenue companies have established separate entities, registered as CSOs, for dedicated social services. It elicits different perceptions among minor CSO functionaries, as they have limited capacity in implementing the program in specific geographical areas.

Conclusion

With the analysis of CSR in India, the Company Act of 2013 has had a substantial impact on the development of CSR in India, as per its legislative framework. This regulation has encouraged a more systematic approach to the contributions of CSOs, social enterprises, environmental organizations, and other stakeholders by mandating CSR efforts for larger firms and strategically connecting these operations to broader socio-economic goals. The focus on structured reporting and accountability helps firms navigate this regulatory labyrinth, promoting a more methodical integration of CSR into corporate strategies and enhancing transparency. This raises the possibility of a significant social impact, ensuring that efforts are not only in line with the law but also aligned with the needs of societal development.

The CSR approach in India, particularly the emphasis on the sectors outlined in Schedule VII of the Act, underscores the importance of aligning business plans with national development objectives. Ensuring that CSR initiatives efficiently address the most pressing issues, such as environmental sustainability, education, and poverty reduction, depends on this alignment. Companies now need to engage in CSR in a way that is sustainable, measurable, and has a positive impact. This is due to legislative efforts to make CSR a mandatory requirement. The continuous development of CSR policies and practices in response to the achievements and challenges encountered since the Act's passage suggests a proactive strategy for enhancing the framework to better meet the needs of the community and businesses.

Furthermore, it is impossible to overstate the importance of the CSR Committee in ensuring that CSR policies are implemented effectively. This organization plays a significant role in guiding CSR projects from inception to completion, encompassing planning, implementation, and evaluation. The long-term viability of CSR programs depends on promoting an accountability and continuous improvement culture, which is fostered by the demand for thorough annual reporting on CSR operations. When these reports are made available to the public, they provide various valuable insights into the CSR policies of businesses, enhancing stakeholder understanding and promoting industry best practices.

Ultimately, the incorporation of CSR into India's corporate governance structure serves as a model that other countries may adopt. The Indian model offers a robust framework for harnessing laws to direct business resources toward addressing pressing environmental and social issues. India's CSR strategy and corporations' increasing proficiency in executing these programs could yield significant insights for global CSR practices, with the potential to impact international standards and practices in corporate responsibility. This global view highlights the importance of scaling and adapting CSR initiatives in a manner that both complies with legal obligations and significantly advances the global agenda for sustainable development.

References

Arevalo, J. A. (2014). Collaboration and partnership in the context of Indian CSR: The Global Compact Local Network and the I4D Project. In D. Vazquez-Brust, J. Sarkis, & J. Cordeiro (Eds.), *Collaboration for sustainability and innovation: A role for sustainability driven by the global South?* (Greening of Industry Networks Studies, vol 3). Springer. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-94-007-7633-3_10

Asafo Agyei, S. (2022). *Diaspora, institutional strategies, and poverty reduction in homelands: A case study of Ghanaians in London*.

Author. (n.d.). *Connect, engage, transform #BecauseYouCare*. Home—India Cares Foundation. https://icfn.in/

Briefing, I. (2022, October 10). Corporate social responsibility in India. *India Briefing News*. https://www.india-briefing.com/news/corporate-social-responsibility-india-5511.html/

Corporate social responsibility (CSR) in India. (n.d.). https://csrcfe.org/about-csr-in-india-public-policy/

Corporate social responsibility under Section 135 of the Companies Act 2013. (n.d.). *cleartax*. https://cleartax.in/s/corporate-social-responsibility

CSOs as actors in governance and development (India). *GFMD*. (n.d.-a). https://gfmd.info/fundings/csos-as-actors-in-governance-and-development-india/

CSR in India: CSR rules and CSR implementation areas. (2024a, April 16). *The CSR Universe*. https://thecsruniverse.com/articles/csr-in-india-csr-rules-and-csr-implementation-areas

CSR policy – India. (n.d.-a). https://www.expeditors.com/media/1391/csr-policy-india.pdf

Dharmapala, D., & Khanna, V. (2018). The impact of mandated corporate social responsibility: Evidence from India's Companies Act of 2013. *International Review of Law and Economics, 56*, 92–104.

Form CSR-1. (n.d.-b). *cleartax*. https://cleartax.in/s/form-csr-1

Gatignon, A., & Bode, C. (2023). When few give to many and many give to few: Corporate social responsibility strategies under India's legal mandate. *Strategic Management Journal, 44*(9).

Global Europe: EU launches global €1.5 billion programme to support civil society organisations. (2021, December 14). https://international-partnerships.ec.europa.eu/news-and-events/news/global-europe-eu-launches-global-eu15-billion-programme-support-civil-society-organisations-2021-12-14_en

Home. (n.d.). https://www.csr.gov.in/content/csr/global/master/home/aboutcsr/about-csr.html

How India's CSR experience can shape ESG strategies. (2023, February 28). *Knowledge at Wharton*. https://knowledge.wharton.upenn.edu/article/how-indias-csr-experience-can-shape-esg-strategies/

India substantially revamps CSR requirements – The impact on compliance at Indian subsidiaries of U.S.-based multinationals: Insights from Ropes & Gray LLP. (2023, August 10). *Insights | Ropes & Gray LLP*. https://www.ropesgray.com/en/insights/alerts/2021/07/india-substantially-revamps-csr-requirements-the-impact-on-compliance-at-indian-subsidiaries

International development news | Devex. (n.d.-b). https://www.devex.com/news/has-india-s-multibillion-dollar-csr-law-delivered-for-development-105768

Islam, Md. R. (2023, April 5). CSO assessment study on the legal and political environment for development and rural development NGOs in Bangladesh. *SSRN*. https://papers.ssrn.com/sol3/papers.cfm?abstract_id=4398098

Jessie Krafft, E. P. (2024, February 15). Unpacking India's CSR law. *CAF America*. https://cafamerica.org/blog/unpacking-indias-csr-law/

Obhan & Associates. (2022, September 28). CSR amendment rules, 2022. *Lexology*. https://www.lexology.com/library/detail.aspx?g=8e959eeb-03e0-455d-9e06-25d0ae674af8

Opportunities and challenges in corporate social responsibility (CSR): Corporations and civil society organizations. *Sampada*. (n.d.-a). https://www.mcciapunesampada.com/2021/04/opportunities-and-challenges-in-csr.html

Philanthropy News Digest. (n.d.). https://philanthropynewsdigest.org/

Policy for corporate social responsibility. (n.d.). *Morgan Stanley India*. https://www.morganstanley.com/content/dam/msdotcom/en/assets/pdfs/about-us-global-offices/india/CSR-Policy-MSIPD.pdf

Shamseer, L., Moher, D., Clarke, M., Ghersi, D., Liberati, A., Petticrew, M., ... & Stewart, L. A. (2015). Preferred reporting items for systematic review and meta-analysis protocols (PRISMA-P) 2015: Elaboration and explanation. *BMJ, 349*.

Sriram, M. S. (2020, December 11). Civil society organizations and foreign contributions. *The India Forum*. https://www.theindiaforum.in/article/civil-society-organisations-and-foreign-contributions

Taxguru_in, & Kaif, M. (2023, February 28). Corporate social responsibility in India: Legal framework and recent developments. *TaxGuru*. https://taxguru.in/company-law/corporate-social-responsibility-india-legal-framework-developments.html

Van Wessel, M., Naz, F., & Sahoo, S. (2021). Complementarities in CSO collaborations: How working with diversity produces advantages. *VOLUNTAS: International Journal of Voluntary and Nonprofit Organizations, 32*, 717–730.

Xiao, Y., & Watson, M. (2019). Guidance on conducting a systematic literature review. *Journal of Planning Education and Research, 39*(1), 93–112.

Received: 21 April 2025 Reviewed: 23 April 2025 Revised: 13 July 2025 Accepted: 17 July 2025

TikTok's Global Takeover

Tasmia Hayath
Lee Business School, University of Nevada Las Vegas, USA.
Email: hayat@unlv.nevada.edu

Tarekol Islam Maruf*
Department of Business Management & Technology, Alfa University College, Malaysia
Email: dr.tarekol@alfa.edu.my
Corresponding Author

ABSTRACT
This case study looks at the rise of TikTok to prominence and its continued growth in a crowded social media environment. It follows the development of the platform and its rapid adoption globally. The most potent drivers of the success of TikTok are its recommendation algorithm, short video content, and popularity among different groups of users. Since this case study examines TikTok rise to global prominence, focusing on the strategic, operational, leadership, and ethical dilemmas it faces especially in the context of international expansion and regulatory scrutiny. The central dilemma addressed is the way how should TikTok navigate global expansion amid regulatory and data privacy challenges. The case also explores how TikTok's leadership handles these challenges, drawing insights into cross-cultural management, strategic adaption, and platform sustainability. The study offers a platform for students and professionals to analyze TikTok's decision-making in a fest-evolving digital ecosystem. The study also touches on the governance, branding, global expansion strategies, and acquisition strategies of the platform. The case concludes by examining the future development of TikTok, flexibility with policy development, and its role in the future digital landscape.

Keywords: Leadership, Competitive strategy, Global expansion, Innovation, Business.

The Start of Tiktok
The rise of TikTok is rooted in the remarkable success of **Musical.ly,** a platform that pioneered the short-form video genre and captivated millions with its focus on user creativity and music-driven expression. Launched in 2014 by Alex Zhu and Luyu Yang in Shanghai, China, Musical.ly rapidly gained global popularity by offering users an accessible and entertaining space to create and share lip-sync, dance, and comedic videos (Britannica, 2025). Its breakthrough lay in its simplicity and intuitiveness, lowering the barriers to content creation. By equipping users with an easy-to-use interface, built-in music library, and video-editing tools, Musical.ly encouraged everyday users—not just celebrities—to become creators in their own right (Lehat, 2022). In an era increasingly driven by visual content, the platform became a launchpad for youth creativity and social interaction.

Musical.ly's early success can be attributed to its unique blend of **creative freedom and community-driven participation**. Its design ethos empowered users of all backgrounds and skill levels to produce content, fostering a sense of inclusion and engagement rarely seen in early social platforms (Kaye, Zeng, & Wikstrom, 2022). The app allowed users to remix and personalize their videos with a wide array of music, filters, and effects—enhancing playfulness and viral potential. This emphasis on personalization and participatory culture helped create a vibrant online community that thrived on expression and connection. The platform's lightweight and user-centric approach marked a paradigm shift in digital media, where content was no longer the sole domain of professionals or influencers but became democratized through simple, yet powerful, creation tools (Zhao & Abidin, 2023).

The turning point in this trajectory came in **November 2017**, when ByteDance—an emerging powerhouse in the Chinese tech sector—acquired Musical.ly in a strategic bid to dominate the global social media space (Xing, 2023). The acquisition was not merely about purchasing a competitor; it was a **calculated move to merge Musical.ly's vibrant user base with ByteDance's technological capabilities**, particularly in artificial intelligence and content recommendation. By August 2018, ByteDance had merged Musical.ly with its own app Douyin to launch TikTok globally (Fan & Hemans, 2022; Ryu, 2022). The new platform retained Musical.ly's core appeal—short-form, music-centered videos—but supercharged it with ByteDance's sophisticated algorithmic engine. This technological leap enabled TikTok to deliver hyper-personalized content feeds that hooked users instantly and kept them engaged for hours. The result was not just another social media app but a **cultural and technological disruptor**, which rapidly reshaped content consumption habits, amplified digital creativity, and redefined global online interaction.

Industry Analysis

The global social media industry has become one of the fastest-evolving and most fiercely contested sectors in the digital economy. With a valuation of $231.1 billion in 2023—up from $193.5 billion the previous year—and projections to hit $434.9 billion by 2027 at a 17.1% compound annual growth rate (CAGR), the stakes are higher than ever. This explosive growth is driven by the ubiquity of mobile internet, the widespread adoption of smartphones, and the surging popularity of short-form video content, especially among Gen Z and Millennials. As innovation cycles accelerate and regulatory scrutiny intensifies, platforms are pressured not only to innovate and grow but also to comply with a fragmented and increasingly politicized global regulatory environment. The landscape has moved beyond simple user acquisition or monetization—it now involves complex interactions between technology, culture, policy, and public trust.

In this competitive and volatile space, TikTok has emerged as a disruptive force that reshaped how users engage with media. Its success lies in an advanced algorithm that delivers hyper-personalized content, enabling continuous user engagement. Yet, TikTok is distinct from its rivals like Meta's Instagram and Facebook or Google's YouTube. Unlike these U.S.-based platforms, TikTok operates at the intersection of cultural influence and geopolitical tension. Under the leadership of CEO Shou Zi Chew, the company has developed an executive strategy that balances innovation with diplomacy, compliance, and reputational management. Chew's approach includes public diplomacy, evident in his testimony before the U.S. Congress where he positioned TikTok as a responsible, globally conscious tech company. Operationally, initiatives like Project Texas—partnering with Oracle to localize U.S. data storage—are aimed at calming national security concerns. Simultaneously, the company is refining its global messaging to align with regional expectations around privacy, moderation, and cultural appropriateness.

TikTok's challenge going forward is twofold: to remain a leader in creative content and algorithmic innovation, while satisfying diverse regulatory and cultural demands across multiple geographies. Its expansion into emerging markets such as Indonesia, Nigeria, Brazil, and Pakistan reveals the depth of this challenge. These regions present unique obstacles—such as uneven digital literacy, cultural sensitivities around content, and strict data sovereignty laws—that increase both the complexity and cost of operations. What TikTok needs is not a uniform governance model, but a flexible and culturally responsive leadership framework that empowers regional teams while preserving a cohesive global identity. In essence, TikTok is no longer just a social media platform—it is a transnational institution operating within a digital sphere governed by shifting political, ethical, and technological norms. Its executive team now bears the responsibility of not only steering corporate strategy, but also shaping the broader global discourse around digital governance, sovereignty, and the ethical use of technology.

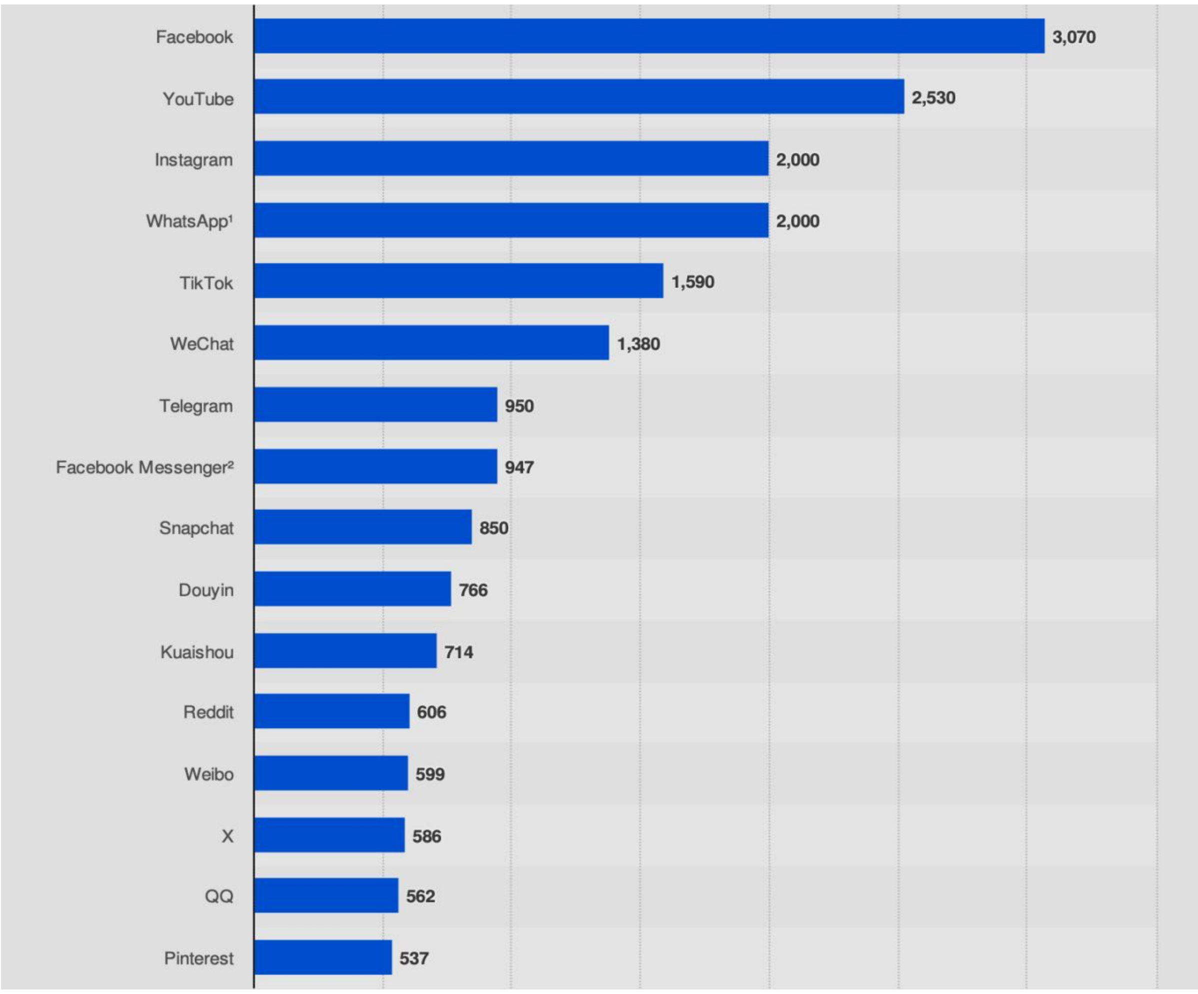


Figure 1: Number of active users in millions

Source: Dixon (2025)

The Growth of Tiktok

ByteDance, mother-company of TikTok, raised some of the highest private investments in tech history with astronomical valuations that valued the company above all others globally including even Uber (Kim & Ahn, 2025). ByteDance was first backed by Susquehanna International Group and SIG Asia

Investments back in 2012 in a Series A round, then raised $100 million from Sequoia Capital in 2014 in what glasses referred to today as the “make-or-break” moment in the company (Tang, 2022; Jolly, 2022). These cash infusions allowed the company to develop its central AI-led recommendation tech, blitzscale users, and quickly expand TikTok’s infrastructure and global presence.

Though it gave the social media upstart a financial lifeline to battle TikTok’s larger rivals like Meta and YouTube (See figure 1), the investment also left the company facing a crucial strategic question:

Do they go for broke in hypergrowth, as TikTok seemed to be doing with its aggressive global expansion, to make investors happy and secure a dominant position over other apps or, do they take a more cautious, compliance-oriented approach in order to preempt regulatory and political backlash?

Due to its rapidly increasing valuation and investor pressures, TikTok’s founders took a blitzscaling approach prioritizing speed of market entry and viral user growth. The app expanded to more than 150 markets from 2018 to 2020, frequently without fully setting up local compliance teams or cultural moderation guidelines. The leadership saw it as advice from the article that rapid growth was required to cement network effects and fend off faster cloning of TikTok by competitors (Montag et al., 2021). But this "shoot first and ask questions later" approach came with substantial operational and reputational exposure:

TikTok was banned in India in June 2020, along with 58 other Chinese apps, over national security and data privacy issues. This proved to be a big blow given that Indian was TikTok’s largest market outside China (The Guardian, 2020).

In the United States, the company was the threatened target of executive orders aimed at preventing it from operating in the country or divesting from its U.S. operations, which required leadership to commence their own “Project Texas” for storing TikTok data locally (Feng, 2023).

No- and Low-Proof: A Guide to Non-Alcoholic Drinks Metrolina Digital Publishing, BIOSCIENCE TIKTOK found itself under scrutiny by European Union authorities multiple times over its handling of children’s data and transparency about its algorithms (European Commission, 2023).

These results show that aggressive scaling is a double-edge sword. Leadership’s choice to pursue user acquisition vs regulatory preparedness won in the short term, but also led to long term weaknesses. This trade-off is a microcosm of a core debate in platform strategy: speed versus sustainability, growth versus governance.

From a management point of view, this strategic bind caused TikTok’s leadership to re-evaluate its approach to global expansion, investing in more local compliance, more regionally based leadership and more diplomatic engagement. It's also a warning about the frailties of a top-down Chinese leadership model when interacting in heterogeneous, politically sensitive global ecosystems.

Finally, this case highlights the importance of strategic foresight and adaptive leadership in digital platform organizations. Growth needs to be balanced against institutional trust, legal compliance, and long-term reputational capital, particularly as it maneuvers in and around the emerging market and international governance environments.

Table 1: Number of monthly active users

Platform	**Monthly Active Users**
Facebook	3 Billion

YouTube	2.5 Billion
Instagram	2 Billion
TikTok	1.5 Billion
Snapchat	800 Million
X (Twitter)	611 Million
Pinterest	498 Million

Sources: Cookson et al., 2024

Bytedance'S Investment and Valuation

ByteDance, the parent of TikTok, has attracted big investments and has posted high valuations, proving to have very high investor trust in its development and future. ByteDance has raised investments in various rounds of funding, which have fueled its development and technological advancements. ByteDance was originally funded with Series A funding by Susquehanna International Group and SIG Asia Investments in June 2012 (Tang, 2022)). Later, in 2014, ByteDance raised a significant Series C funding of $100 million from Sequoia Capital (Jolly, 2022).

These early investments were crucial in securing the funds that ByteDance needed in terms of raising capital to grow its operations and develop further its AI-driven content recommendation technology, which lies at the core of TikTok's success. As the popularity of TikTok increased, the valuation of ByteDance increased exponentially. In 2018, the valuation of ByteDance increased to $75 billion, surpassing Uber as the most valuable startup in the world (Kim & Ahn, 2025).). Such a valuation reflected the market appreciation of the immense growth of TikTok as well as the capacity of the application to upend the social media space.

The valuations keep changing as the market forces and investors' perceptions change. The massive investments in ByteDance have significantly impacted the development of TikTok. Investments have enabled ByteDance to invest heavily in developing TikTok's infrastructure, refining its algorithm, and running aggressive marketing campaigns to acquire new users globally. These investments have been instrumental in TikTok's rapid user acquisition, global expansion, and challenging the established social media giants.

Operational Challenges and Managerial Trade-Offs

TikTok’s leaders encountered a series of important operational challenges concerning the platform’s scaling, localization, and compliance, as the app established its footprint at unprecedented speed across the world. It wasn't just technical, because there were strategic decisions and resources to allocate at the highest level.

A central operational conundrum arose during the global expansion of TikTok from 2018 to 2021:How would TikTok’s management balance content quality, cultural sensitivity and legal compliance amid rapid international growth to satisfy both users and investors?

Central to that challenge is TikTok’s algorithmic content distribution system, which called for localized moderation, at scale. Unlike Facebook or YouTube, TikTok’s short-form content is moderated on an entirely real-time basis, which means decisions on what stays up or comes down must also be made within minutes. This led to a perpetual balancing act between free expression and safety on the platform, especially in multilingual and multi-cultural societies like India, Indonesia, Nigeria, and Brazil (Isaak & Hanna 2018).

To help meet these challenges, TikTok poured resources into creating regional moderation hubs. These were the teams that were responsible for, among other things, enforcing community standards, moderating illegal/harmful content, and ensuring compliance with data privacy legislation, such as the GDPR of the EU and IT Rules 2021 of India (European Commission, 2023).

But this approach had its own operational challenges:

- Speed vs. Accuracy: Should moderators move fast to take down virally spreading content, or wait for contextual comprehension?
- Centralization vs. Localization: Is it better for decision-making to be made in China/ByteDance HQ, or can local teams contribute to make sure the content is culturally sensitive?
- Standardization vs. Adaptation: Even if TikTok were to draft a global content policy, would it need to adapt those policies to unique country contexts?

TikTok's data storage architecture was also called into question. Western governments concerned about Chinese government access to foreign user data reacted strongly to the company's centralizing its data operations. This resulted in grander efforts such as 'Project Texas' (Feng, 2023) for the U.S., which meant Chinese TNCs such as TikTok had to work with are you so to make it so that American user data stayed in the U.S. and 'Project Clover' for the EU aimed at creating regional data silos which failed to materialize (Feng, 2023).

These efforts required massive re-allocation of resources, legal coordination, and the creation of new technical infrastructure, all while attempting to maintain user trust and platform stability.

In other words, TikTok's operational challenges also illustrate the managerial difficulty of operating an internet platform that is distributed globally, culturally diverse and politically sensitive. Leaders weren't just running up technology backlogs they were muddling through a matrix of legal, ethical and cultural standards that drew lines in the sands of various markets and could shift in real time because of leadership decisions worldwide.

Ethical Dilemmas in Platform Governance

As TikTok quickly ascended to become one of the world's most popular social media apps, its leaders faced a series of complex ethical questions. These are issues, from data privacy and content censorship to disinformation and algorithmic bias, that highlight the moral muddiness of running a globe-straddling digital platform one that originates in China but that serves users in more than 150 cultures, many of them politically at odds.

At the center of the ethical thicket around TikTok is the platform's powerful algorithm, which feeds you more of what it thinks you want based on what you are looking at. This heavy engagement and satisfying experience are propelled by the system, but it does beg a moral question:

How much of a Social Experiment do you want algorithms -particularly on minors and with little to no transparency and external oversight- to be? Several studies have identified that TikTok's feed may be used to distribute harmful content such as content about eating disorders, self-harm trends and misinformation]. The moderation is a continuous tension between freedom of speech and user safety, especially for culturally sensitive or potentially harmful content.

Another very important ethical consideration is that of privacy of data. TikTok has come under fire for collecting vast swaths of user data like location, device details and even how people type — and storing it in a manner that some American lawmakers have said is potentially accessible by the Chinese government. This has also raised concerns of state surveillance, notably in the US, EU and India (Feng, 2023; Isaak & Hanna, 2018). In 2023, TikTok was fined €345 million by the European Commission for infringing children's data privacy rights under the General Data Protection Regulation (GDPR) (European Commission, 2023).

Which poses a question for TikTok's leadership:

How does the platform provide personalized experiences and enable business intelligence without running afoul of privacy laws and losing user trust?

Leadership has taken steps in the form of Project Texas (U.S.) and Project Clover (EU), which promise data's storage will be in country, and commitment to transparency. But they also note that critics say such efforts may be more "theater" than "substance" in the absence of outside oversight (BBC News, 2023).

Censorship and geopolitical pressure add layers of complexity to TikTok's ethical terrain. It has been alleged that it would act to suppress courses of a political nature in other countries, such as LGBTQ+ content in Indonesia, pro-democracy protests in Hong Kong and criticism of governments in the Middle East (Montag et al., 2021). These are situations that put TikTok's leadership in a tough spot.

Would TikTok follow local censorship demands to preserve access to markets, or adhere to global standards of freedom of expression and risk getting banned or subjected to sanctions?

Finally, the problem of algorithmic discrimination is far from being solved. It has been reported that TikTok's AI algorithm may be favoring groups of demographics over others, such as minority populations (Noble, 2018). This raises question about unintended bias and the moral use of machine learning in the construction of public discourse."

TikTok's leadership, including the company's CEO, Shou Zi Chew, has moved to cast the platform as an ethical and globally responsible platform, making promises on transparency, user safety and regulatory collaboration. But the volume of people on the platform and volume of content creates almost no way to be totally exposed to ethical concerns.

In short, TikTok embodies a new category of ethical challenge for global management. The company's leaders must weave through increasingly complicated moral decisions everyday decisions that have consequences not just for users, but for democratic values, public well-being and digital regulation all over the world.

CHALLENGES AND CONTROVERSIES

Privacy issues regarding data have also been a concern as far as TikTok is concerned. These are primarily data gathering, storage, and data misuse by the browsing history of the user, user data, and location (Felaco, 2025). Fears about how much information TikTok is amassing and with how much of the information are being utilized, i.e., targeted advertising and business-for-sale frameworks, have been expressed (PBS, 2024). Data privacy also comprises data protection.

Complaints have been raised regarding the potential unauthorized use of user data and the measures taken to secure. such data from misuse or unauthorized use (Alkamli & Alabduljabbar, 2024). All other social media data privacy policies used are mostly used for comparison to that of TikTok, and there are a few instances where concerns are exaggerated because TikTok is owned by another nation. To allay such concerns, TikTok has been subjected to further regulatory oversight and probes in most nations. TikTok's data treatment has come under fire from governments and regulators, with fines, calls to change policy, and debate regarding how best to most effectively protect users' privacy on the app.

For example, United States Federal Trade Commission (FTC) has charged TikTok's children's data privacy with its inquiry (Brown et al., 2024), while some European Union regulators have begun their inquiries under GDPR as well (Buckley et al., 2024).

CONTENT MODERATION

Content moderation is a tremendous challenge for TikTok due to the volume of user-posted content that is shared on the platform each day (Zimmerman, 2024). Moderating every bit of content to ensure that it follows community guidelines and legal standards is challenging and resource intensive. Concerns over objectionable content have been overriding. This includes the presence of hate speech, bullying, misinformation, and violent or sexually oriented content on the app (LaFleur, 2023). The spread of misinformation poses a challenge in maintaining the purity of information posted on TikTok.

There have been controversies over the effectiveness and transparency of the content moderation policy and practice of TikTok. It is alleged that content moderation is often imbalanced or lacking, while some accuse the process of censorship or prejudice.

INTERNATIONAL REGULATION

TikTok has also faced increasing regulatory heat and government scrutiny worldwide. Foreign meddling and national security have pushed governments around the world to act against TikTok, from inquiry to potential prohibition or limitation on TikTok activities (Bernot et al., 2024).

In other instances, the governments have been worried about other foreign governments accessing the data of users, and this has been a source of concern over national security and data sovereignty (Bonyhady, 2023). This has been controversial regarding the appropriate level of regulation of TikTok and other foreign social media.

TikTok's legal environment is blurry and very uneven country-wise. It is hard for TikTok to move around different legal systems and political priorities and hence become challenging to operate globally before achieving the mile stone (see figure 2).

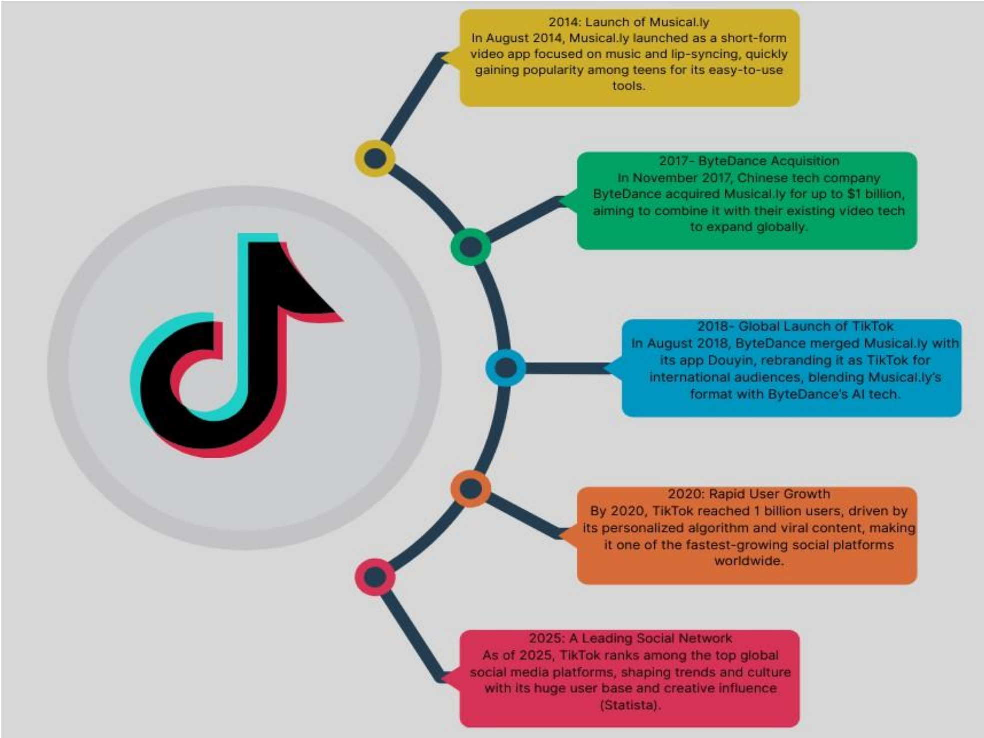


Figure 2: Milestones

Leadership Analysis: Navigating Growth, Scrutiny, and Global Governance

The evolution of leadership at TikTok reflects a profound shift in response to the platform's transformation from a fast-scaling Chinese start-up into a global digital force operating under intense geopolitical scrutiny. Understanding this trajectory—from the vision of founder Zhang Yiming to the diplomatic stewardship of current CEO Shou Zi Chew—offers valuable insight into how TikTok has adapted its strategic, operational, and ethical decision-making under pressure. Zhang Yiming, a former Microsoft engineer, founded ByteDance with a clear focus on algorithm-driven personalization and rapid product iteration. His centralized, engineering-led leadership enabled fast innovation and streamlined decision-making, facilitating TikTok's meteoric rise. However, as the platform expanded into the West, Zhang's model of centralized control increasingly clashed with expectations around transparency, data sovereignty, and ethical accountability. His decision to step down in 2021 signaled the company's recognition that a new leadership approach was needed to navigate the complex international stage.

That transition led to the appointment of Shou Zi Chew, whose background as a Harvard-trained banker and former Xiaomi CFO positioned him as a globally palatable figurehead with both financial acumen and diplomatic finesse. Chew's leadership has been defined by public diplomacy, cultural fluency, and a commitment to transparency. His role came to the forefront during the 2023 U.S. congressional hearings, where he defended TikTok against allegations of Chinese government interference. Rather than relying on technical jargon or corporate deflection, Chew adopted a crisis leadership style centered on operational openness, platform independence, and user protection. In doing so, he exemplified how tech leaders must act as both executives and statesmen, capable of navigating not only market competition but also political and cultural skepticism across borders. His tenure illustrates the rising importance of adaptive, cross-cultural leadership in a digital environment fraught with international tensions and regulatory complexities.

Chew's leadership also presents ongoing dilemmas that encapsulate the broader governance challenges of global tech platforms. Should TikTok prioritize fast innovation, such as expanding TikTok Shop and AI features, or pause to ensure compliance with the fragmented and evolving legal regimes across jurisdictions? Can a CEO with no ties to the U.S. or EU truly gain the trust of Western regulators while the parent company, ByteDance, remains under Chinese ownership? And how much autonomy should be granted to regional teams to manage content moderation, legal affairs, and public relations? These questions are not just operational—they strike at the heart of platform governance and trust-building. For tech companies worldwide, TikTok's journey offers vital lessons: crisis communication is no longer a niche skill but a central leadership function; cultural fluency and ethical clarity are as essential as technical prowess; and partial transparency, if well-articulated, can serve as a powerful bridge between corporate ambition and public accountability. Ultimately, the shift from a product-centered founder to a diplomacy-driven CEO reflects the evolving demands of tech leadership in a world where innovation, ethics, and politics are deeply intertwined.

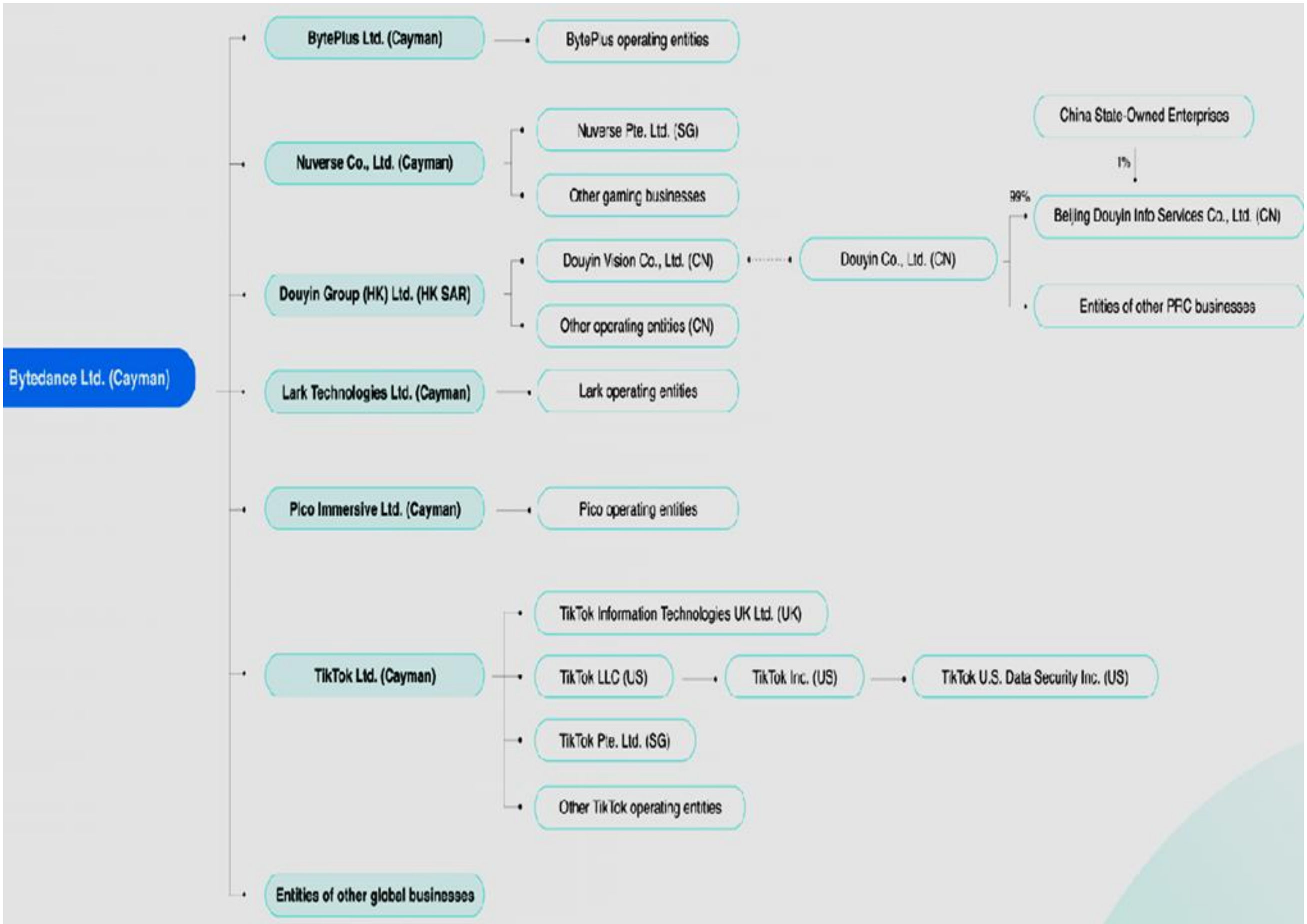


Figure 3: ByteDance corporate structure

Source: ByteDance (2023)

Future Outlook

TikTok's long-term growth strategy increasingly centers on the integration of **e-commerce functionalities** within its platform. By enabling users to discover, review, and purchase goods and services directly through the app, TikTok is aiming to bridge the gap between social media entertainment and transactional commerce (Andon & Annuar, 2023). This seamless fusion of content and commerce not only strengthens user engagement but also unlocks significant revenue potential. For content creators, it introduces an additional income stream beyond brand sponsorships and creator funds, while for TikTok, it positions the platform as a key player in the fast-growing social commerce economy. As consumer behavior evolves toward more integrated digital experiences, this strategic pivot allows TikTok to remain competitive with e-commerce-heavy platforms like Instagram and YouTube.

Another critical avenue for TikTok's future development is **geographic and demographic market expansion**. While the platform has already achieved remarkable global reach, there remains untapped potential in both emerging markets and underrepresented user groups. For instance, TikTok could increase its foothold in regions where digital infrastructure is improving, or tailor content and features to older age groups who may not currently see themselves as part of TikTok's youthful brand image. However, this expansion must be undertaken with cultural nuance and legal acumen. Each country presents unique regulatory, political, and cultural considerations that demand localized approaches to content moderation, data privacy, and platform governance. As TikTok grows, it must continue to navigate these diverse terrains while maintaining its global coherence and operational integrity.

Finally, TikTok's ability to **diversify its content formats** beyond short-form videos could be a catalyst for long-term user retention and new user acquisition. While the platform's success has been built on its viral, bite-sized videos, integrating longer-form content, livestreaming, or interactive media such as games and polls can expand its user base and time-on-platform metrics. These additions would allow TikTok to compete not only with traditional social media platforms but also with streaming services and live broadcast apps. However, this evolution must be executed with caution to preserve TikTok's core identity—its ease of use, fast-paced content flow, and algorithmic personalization. Balancing innovation with brand consistency will be key to sustaining its global dominance in the digital media ecosystem.

Emerging Challenges

TikTok's continued success is not guaranteed, as it faces several **emerging challenges** that could significantly shape its future trajectory. One of the most pressing concerns is **intensifying competition** from established social media giants. Platforms like Instagram and YouTube have rapidly developed their own short-form video features—Reels and Shorts, respectively—mirroring TikTok's signature format. These platforms already have massive user bases and mature monetization infrastructures, giving them a competitive edge in attracting both audiences and creators. As the battle for user attention escalates, TikTok must not only defend its market share but also find ways to differentiate itself through innovation, user experience, and creator incentives to remain ahead in the content economy.

In addition to external competition, TikTok must grapple with **shifting user preferences and fast-evolving digital trends**. The viral nature of the platform means it thrives on novelty, but that same reliance creates pressure to constantly innovate. What captivates users today may lose appeal tomorrow. To stay culturally relevant, TikTok must remain agile, responsive, and in tune with emerging subcultures, memes, and digital behaviors across different regions and demographics. Failure to adapt could cause user fatigue, declining engagement, and eventual migration to newer, trendier platforms. Continuous evolution in content format, algorithmic curation, and creator support will be essential to sustain the platform's popularity and cultural influence.

Compounding these challenges is **intensified regulatory scrutiny** that places TikTok under a global microscope. Governments across the world are increasingly concerned about issues such as data privacy, national security, misinformation, and harmful content. TikTok must navigate a labyrinth of legal regimes—from the U.S. and European Union to India and Southeast Asia—each with unique compliance requirements and political sensitivities. These regulations can not only increase operational costs but also lead to bans, lawsuits, and damage to public trust. The platform's leadership must develop robust governance mechanisms, enhance transparency, and invest in local compliance frameworks to mitigate legal risks. How TikTok manages this complex regulatory environment will be a defining factor in its ability to grow sustainably and ethically on the world stage.

Cross-Cultural and Emerging Market Strategy

TikTok's explosive global growth is not solely a byproduct of its innovative algorithm—it is the result of a deliberate strategy of localization and cultural adaptability. While many Western platforms have struggled to scale globally, TikTok has succeeded by embedding itself within local ecosystems, adapting content to regional norms, and engaging with community influencers. This localization strategy, however, has introduced complex management dilemmas. Operating in over 150 countries, many of which are culturally and politically distinct, has forced the platform to confront fundamental questions: How can a global tech company maintain a coherent brand identity and governance model while simultaneously respecting diverse cultural norms and regulatory frameworks? These tensions highlight the critical importance of cross-cultural leadership in today's digital platforms, where scaling content is no longer enough—understanding context is everything.

In emerging markets such as India, Indonesia, Nigeria, Pakistan, and Brazil, TikTok employed a combination of tactical adaptations to build trust and relevance. These included multilingual support (with more than 75 languages), algorithmic promotion of local music and festivals, and partnerships with local influencers to drive authentic engagement. While these efforts accelerated user adoption, they also raised new governance challenges around content moderation and ethical standards. What is entertaining in Brazil may be offensive in Pakistan, demanding that TikTok's leadership walk a tightrope between supporting user expression and upholding cultural sensitivities. The broader issue is not just about platform content—it's about trust formation across vastly different social contracts, where global platforms must either adjust or risk regulatory retaliation.

Indeed, TikTok's experiences in India, Indonesia, and Nigeria serve as cautionary tales about the political risks of global expansion. The app has been banned, suspended, or heavily scrutinized in these markets for reasons ranging from national security to cultural immorality. These situations underscore what TikTok's executives have termed the "localization dilemma": Should the platform adopt a fragmented approach with country-specific models to placate regulators, or enforce uniform global standards and risk local resistance or bans? CEO Shou Zi Chew's leadership reflects a hybrid strategy—empowering regional teams to handle PR, regulatory negotiations, and content sensitivities, while centralizing algorithmic control and core engineering. This dual approach highlights a broader shift in executive leadership requirements for global platforms: success now hinges not just on technical scalability, but on political literacy, cultural empathy, and ethical agility.

Lessons in Cross-cultural Management

In emerging markets, uniform global strategies often fall short due to the complex interplay of local laws, cultural norms, and trust dynamics. Companies like TikTok illustrate that success hinges on tailoring operations, content, and partnerships to the specific socio-political and legal landscape of each region. Decentralized leadership empowers local teams with the agility to navigate cultural sensitivities and regulatory crises more responsively. Leaders in such environments must act not only as brand custodians but also as cultural negotiators, building trust across diverse constituencies. This requires not a singular marketing playbook but a deep, on-the-ground understanding of what drives perception, behavior, and regulation in each locale.

Moreover, cross-cultural competence is no longer a niche skill—it is a central strategic advantage in digital globalization. Executives today must be adept in navigating political terrain, media ethics, and cultural identity with as much fluency as they wield algorithmic scaling and monetization models. TikTok's rise amid intense geopolitical scrutiny is a case in point: decisions around data governance, content localization, and corporate framing now intersect with high-stakes diplomatic and ethical considerations. The question of whether data should be stored centrally for efficiency or regionally to comply with local laws, or whether content policies should be standardized globally or customized per market, reflects the inherent trade-offs between efficiency, cohesion, and legitimacy. These are not just operational questions—they are core leadership dilemmas that call for principled reasoning and strategic foresight.

Ultimately, this case underscores the evolving expectations of executive leadership in global tech firms. Success is not merely about optimizing KPIs or scaling fast; it is about ethical discernment, regulatory engagement, and cultural intelligence. Business education must evolve to equip students with the capacity to lead in contested spaces—where leadership agility, ethical foresight, and localization are vital. By situating leadership within the domains of global ethics, crisis communication, and cross-cultural collaboration, this case offers students a powerful platform to explore how future leaders must balance innovation and compliance, profit and principle, scalability and sensitivity.

DISCUSSION QUESTIONS

1. How does ByteDance's central control impact TikTok's Regional adaption?
2. What are the ethical issues of TikTok's AI recommendations?
3. How does regulation affect TikTok's global expansion?
4. How do social trends influence TikTok's content rules?
5. How could you imply the strategic platform of TikTok to grow your business?

REFERENCES

Alkamli, S., & Alabduljabbar, R. (2024). Understanding privacy concerns in ChatGPT: A data-driven approach with LDA topic modeling. *Heliyon*, *10*(20).

Andon, N. S., & Annuar, S. N. S. (2023). The adaptation of social media marketing activities in s-commerce: tiktok shop. *Information Management and Business Review*, *15*(1), 176-183.

Balogun-Ibijunle, A., Ogunbola, O., Olatunji, O., Doyinsola, A., Akin-Odukoya, O., Ojenagbon, S., & Ridwan, M. (2024). Dominance of short form videos: Cross-age analysis of TikTok's influence. *Lakhomi Journal Scientific Journal of Culture*, *5*(2), 104-115.

Bernot, A., Cooney-O'Donoghue, D., & Mann, M. (2024). Governing Chinese technologies: TikTok, foreign interference, and technological sovereignty. *Internet Policy Review*, *13*(1).

Britannica (2025). What TikTok's uncertain future means for data privacy and platform regulation. https://www.britannica.com/topic/TikTok

Brown, M. K., Pounders, K. R., & Wilcox, G. B. (2024). Examining the Issues of Social Media, Children, and Privacy: A Case Study. In *The Darker Side of Social Media* (pp. 179-213). Routledge.

Buckley, G., Caulfield, T., & Becker, I. (2024). GDPR and the indefinable effectiveness of privacy regulators: Can performance assessment be improved?. *Journal of Cybersecurity*, *10*(1), tyae017.

ByteDance. (2022). ByteDance. https://www.bytedance.com/en/

Community Guidelines Enforcement Report. (2025). Tiktok.com. https://www.tiktok.com/transparency/en/community-guidelines-enforcement-2024-4

Cookson, J. A., Mullins, W., & Niessner, M. (2024). Social media and finance. *Available at SSRN 4806692*.

Dixon, S. (2023). Most popular social networks worldwide as of January 2023, ranked by number of monthly active users. *Retrieved from Statista: https://www. statista. com/statistics/272014/global-social-networks-rankedby-number-of-users*, *25*.

Fan, M., & Hemans, M. (2022). TikTok: How a Chinese video clip app became a popular and successful global brand. In *Casebook of Chinese Business Management* (pp. 33-45). Singapore: Springer Nature Singapore.

Felaco, C. (2025). Making Sense of Algorithm: Exploring TikTok Users' Awareness of Content Recommendation and Moderation Algorithms. *International Journal of Communication*, *19*, 22.

Jolly, D. (2022). Companies of the Chinese Internet: The Only Potential Rival to Silicon Valley. In *The New Threat: China's Rapid Technological Transformation* (pp. 75-96). Cham: Springer International Publishing.

Kaye, D. B. V., Zeng, J., & Wikstrom, P. (2022). *TikTok: Creativity and culture in short video*. John Wiley & Sons.

Khan, K. (2023). User-Centric Algorithms: Sculpting the Future of Adaptive Video Streaming. *International Transactions on Electrical Engineering and Computer Science*, *2*(4), 155-162.

Kim, J., & Ahn, S. (2025). The platform policy matrix: Promotion and regulation. *Policy & Internet*, *17*(1), e414.

Kozyreva, A., Herzog, S. M., Lewandowsky, S., Hertwig, R., Lorenz-Spreen, P., Leiser, M., & Reifler, J. (2023). Resolving content moderation dilemmas

between free speech and harmful misinformation. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, *120*(7), e2210666120.
LaFleur, G. (2023). *What is TikTok? | Definition from TechTarget*. WhatIs.com. https://www.techtarget.com/whatis/definition/TikTok
Luo, G., Zhang, Z., & Diao, S. (2022). Empirical analysis and modelling social network user interaction behavior and time characteristics based on selection preference. *Information Sciences*, *608*, 1202-1220.
Mangan, D. (2024, December 9). *TikTok says ban would cost U.S. small businesses, creators $1.3 billion in first month*. CNBC. https://www.cnbc.com/2024/12/09/tiktok-ban-cost-us-small-businesses-creators-billion-dollars-month.html
PBS News (2024). *TikTok faces FTC investigation over data and security practices, AP reports*. PBS News. https://www.pbs.org/newshour/politics/tiktok-faces-ftc-investigation- over-data-and-security-practices-ap-reports
Qin, Z., Wang, G., Deng, W., & Hao, Y. (2025). Mobile E-commerce. In *Introduction to E-Commerce* (pp. 485-524). Singapore: Springer Nature Singapore.
Ryu, S. (2022). *ByteDance: TikTok and Douyin in Online Streaming Wars*. SAGE Publications: SAGE Business Cases Originals.
Tang, M. (2022). Not Yet the End of Transnational Digital Capitalism: A Communication Perspective of the US–China Decoupling Rhetoric. *International Journal of Communication*, *16*, 26.
Xing, G. (2023). Study on the Marketing Strategy of ByteDance Company in the Internet Industry-Taking TikTok as an Example. *Siam University*.
Zhang, Y., Liu, C., & Lang, C. (2025). How luxury fashion brands leverage TikTok to captivate young consumers: an exploratory investigation using video analytics. *Journal of Marketing Analytics*, *13*(1), 128-144.
https://www.facebook.com/bbcnews. (2015). *Technology - BBC News*. BBC News; BBC News. https://www.bbc.com/news/technology
Zhao, X., & Abidin, C. (2023). The “fox eye” challenge trend: Anti-racism work, platform affordances, and the vernacular of gesticular activism on TikTok. *Social Media+ Society*, *9*(1), 20563051231157590.
Fannin, R. (2019, September 13). *The Strategy Behind TikTok’s Global Rise*. Harvard Business Review. https://hbr.org/2019/09/the-strategy-behind-tiktoks-global-rise
Heifetz, R., Linsky, M., & Grashow, A. (2009). *The Practice of Adaptive Leadership: Tools and Tactics for Changing Your Organization and the World*. Harvard.edu. https://www.hks.harvard.edu/publications/practice-adaptive-leadership-tools-and-tactics-changing-your-organization-and-world
Live updates: US Congress in hostile grilling of TikTok CEO Shou Zi Chew. (n.d.). *BBC News*. https://www.bbc.com/news/live/world-us-canada-65042782
Zimmerman, A. (2024). Not a blank slate: The role of big tech in misinformation and radicalization. *Digital Society*, *3*(1), 6-11.

IIUM Journal of Case Studies in Management: Vol. 16, No. 2, August 2025, pp.57-68
ISSN: 2810-2327 e-ISSN: 2710-7175
Received: 16 April 2025 Reviewed: 5 May 2025 Revised: 14 July 2025 Accepted: 17 July 2025

The Bonus that Wasn't Out at Millennium Company

Suhaimi Mhd Sarif
International Islamic University Malaysia
E-mail: albanjari@yahoo.com

Dolhadi Zainudin
International Islamic University Malaysia
E-mail: dolhadi@iium.edu.my

Yusof Ismail
International Islamic University Malaysia
E-mail: yusof.edu@gmail.com

Yayan Firmansah
Universitas Darussalam (UNIDA) Gontor Indonesia
E-mail: yayanf@unida.gontor.ac.id

Rohaziah Yahya*
SRI Ibn Kathir
E-mail: rohaziah_yahya@hotmail.com
Corresponding author

Abstract
This case presents a challenge for Zulkarnain Bakar, an industrial relations analyst at Nusantara Equity Consultants (NEC), tasked with advising Millennium Company—a renowned food manufacturing firm—after its controversial decision to withhold staff bonuses in the pandemic year. Known for a harmonious partnership with the Union of Factory Workers (UFW) and a tradition of shared rewards, Millennium now faces mounting pressure from its union and internal stakeholders to balance contractual integrity with survival. The case requires Zulkarnain to examine the interplay between organizational values, collective bargaining agreements, legal frameworks, and ethical leadership. Should Millennium prioritize immediate contractual fulfillment, or adopt a stance of sustainable stewardship for long-term employment and stakeholder trust? The analyst must integrate legal, ethical, and socio-economic considerations to propose a path forward for all parties.

Keywords: Collective bargaining, Collective agreement, Industrial relations.

INTRODUCTION

On January 12, 2021, Zulkarnain Bakar sat at his modest office in Kuala Lumpur, the city's skyline faded by persistent rain. His inbox had just received an urgent request from Millennium Company's Board of Directors: review and recommend a course of action following escalating tensions over the non-payment of the annual bonus—a ritual that, for years, had been the heartbeat of Millennium's organizational culture. Unlike his previous assignments, this case required Zulkarnain to traverse not only industrial relations law and financial stability but also the intangibles of trust, justice, and *ummatic* stewardship in a time of extraordinary upheaval.

Millennium was established in the early 1980s, had grown from a small family-owned plant to a leading force in Malaysia's food manufacturing sector, its blue-and-yellow factory an icon of reliability and community spirit. Central to this ascent was a sustained partnership with UFW, built on robust collective agreements and a shared ethos of dignity. But as the COVID-19 pandemic unsettled global markets, the company's once-steady ground began to shift. The signing of the fourth collective agreement in February 2021—intended as a symbol of continuity—now felt almost ironic in hindsight.

HISTORY OF MILLENNIUM COMPANY

Millennium, established in the early 1980s, began as little more than a tin-roofed warehouse on the outskirts of town—just a handful of workers, a dream, and the scent of fresh-baked bread rising each dawn. Its founder, Pak Hassan, a kampung teacher's son, set out not just to build a business, but to nurture a community. "People first, always," he would say, passing out kuih to staff after every Friday prayer.

Over the decades, Millennium's blue-and-yellow factory grew into a landmark, visible from the main highway—a symbol of reliability and communal care. Through the bustle of modernization, Millennium kept its heart. Annual Hari Raya feasts were open to staff, families, and sometimes the entire neighborhood. Schoolchildren on field trips learned not only how bread was baked, but how a company could embody trust and togetherness.

What set Millennium apart wasn't just its products, but its people. Management knew every worker by name, remembered birthdays, and attended weddings and funerals alike. In the lunchroom, there was no hierarchy—only colleagues. The union, instead of being seen as an adversary, was treated as a vital partner. Whenever issues arose, both sides sat down not to clash, but to consult, invoking the spirit of syura—deliberation—and *ukhuwwah*—brotherhood.

There were hard times too: the 1997 Asian financial crisis, floods that swept through the district, and, most recently, the Covid-19 pandemic. Each challenge threatened to unravel years of progress. But even at their lowest, Millennium's leaders refused retrenchments as a first resort. They launched a hardship fund for struggling staff, gave advances on salaries, and partnered with the union to deliver food baskets to affected families. When machines fell silent during the MCO, the company used its delivery fleet to support local hospitals and soup kitchens.

Employees—Muslim, Buddhist, Christian, Hindu—would often say, "Millennium is more than a workplace; it's a second home." The company's code of conduct emphasized compassion, mutual respect, and service to the community—reflecting not only Madani values of inclusiveness and care, but the broader Islamic Hadhari spirit of balanced, progressive living.

Negotiations with the union were different at Millennium. Where other firms saw unions as obstacles, Millennium viewed them as essential co-navigators. There were debates, yes, and moments of disappointment, but even disagreements were carried out with *adab*—decorum—grounded in the shared belief that the company's future was everyone's responsibility.

And so, Millennium thrived—not simply through profits, but through collective resilience and shared prosperity. Its story was retold in business journals and village *surau*s alike: how a factory became a family, how success was measured not just in growth charts but in children's laughter at staff picnics, in hands joined in prayer during hardship, and in the enduring trust between worker and management.

Millennium's journey—marked by ups and downs, storms and celebrations—stands as a testament to what can be achieved when a company sees itself not as a fortress, but as an ummah: a living, breathing community, striving for excellence, always together.

THE DILEMMA UNFOLDS

Millennium's annual bonus was more than a line item in the collective agreement. It was woven into the fabric of the company's identity, celebrated each December with staff gatherings, family picnics, and communal laughter. Article 26 of the collective agreement, reaffirmed year after year, promised a two-month bonus to all employees, adjusted by performance but never before withheld in its entirety.

This tradition was the stuff of local legend. Stories abounded of how the bonus paid for a daughter's university registration, a new motorcycle for a young technician, or covered medical bills for a retired supervisor's ailing parent. Every December, the factory gates would fill with the smell of grilled satay and the sound of a rented band. Kids from every department—production, administration, logistics—raced in burlap sacks while managers, often indistinguishable from their teams in Millennium-blue T-shirts, cheered them on. There was a standing joke that you could tell who worked at Millennium just by spotting the families at the supermarket, their trolleys unusually full the week before school started.

Local newspapers often picked up on these scenes: "Millennium Spreads Holiday Cheer With Generous Bonus, Staff Picnic," ran a headline in the Gombak Herald in 2018, featuring a photo of Mr. Zulkifli, a forklift driver, being handed his bonus envelope by the Managing Director herself. Social media, too, had its moments: every year, Facebook filled with snapshots of Millennium's annual picnic—fathers hoisting children onto their shoulders, lines of women in bright scarves laughing as they joined the 'Telematch', posts tagged with #MillenniumFamily.

Union leaders themselves would share stories at each negotiation: how even in lean years, the bonus was paid in full—a gesture, they said, that inspired loyalty and drove Millennium's reputation as an employer of choice. "People stay because they know Millennium stands by its word," one union post read, garnering hundreds of likes and supportive comments. "It's not just the money. It's the feeling that we matter."

The company's own website featured video interviews with long-serving staff, many of whom credited the annual bonus with helping them achieve milestones—from buying a first home to sending children for overseas education. In the wider business community, Millennium was cited in HR forums as a model of responsible, inclusive corporate culture.

Even suppliers and clients, watching from the outside, took note. “You could always sense something special at Millennium in December,” said a distributor in a LinkedIn testimonial. “People smiled more. You could feel the pride.”

In the company canteen, walls displayed framed collages from past picnics and bonus days—proof that for Millennium, the bonus wasn’t just an obligation. It was a living symbol of mutual respect, shared success, and a promise kept, year after year.

Yet December 2020 brought an unfamiliar chill. Management’s memo, released quietly but felt viscerally, announced the suspension of the bonus amidst the company’s first-ever financial loss. Despite guarantees of job security and no pay cuts, the decision sent ripples through the workforce and union ranks.

Where there had once been laughter and plans, now there was silence and uncertainty. The news struck like an unexpected frost after a season of steady sun, freezing the hopes that staff and their families had tenderly nurtured. Around the canteen tables and in *WhatsApp* groups, conversations that had once buzzed with talk of holiday feasts and new-year ambitions faded into anxious quiet.

Many employees felt as if the ground beneath them had shifted. Rashidah, a single mother in the packing department, found herself staring at her daughter’s university acceptance letter, uncertain if she could afford the registration fee. Pak Din, whose house had long needed roof repairs before the monsoon, quietly folded away his plans and kept a bucket beneath the growing leak. Young Faizal, who had promised his wife to fix their battered car before the baby arrived, now put off the mechanic’s visit, hoping the old engine would last just a little longer.

The disappointment wasn’t just individual—it was communal, echoing like a missed beat in the company’s annual rhythm. The union’s Facebook page, once filled with smiling photos from picnics and games, now brimmed with somber posts and anxious questions: “Will the bonus return next year?” “How are others coping?” Some staff confided that, for the first time, they had to break the news to elderly parents in kampung that there would be no extra to send home for the end-of-year kenduri, or to support a younger sibling’s school supplies.

Shops in the town near Millennium felt the chill too. The owner of Kedai Ria, who usually stocked up on children’s shoes and school bags each December, watched his inventory sit untouched, his regular customers stopping by just to look, not to buy.

It was as if the familiar joy of bonus season had been replaced by a cloud of uncertainty—like a volcanic eruption that left everything stranded, as if time itself had stopped. Plans—big and small—were suddenly on hold, as if flights had been grounded and families left waiting at silent, empty airports for news that never came.

In hushed meetings and late-night phone calls, union leaders struggled to console members, torn between understanding the company’s plight and advocating for the promises enshrined in Article 26. Hopes that had once soared now hung in limbo, their futures unclear.

Where once there had been a festival of shared achievement, now there lingered a quiet ache—a realization that for all the unity and history, the bonds of trust and hope had been tested as never before.

UNION RESPONSE

A hastily convened union meeting underscored the emotional and existential weight of the issue. The UFW's usually cordial gathering was now a room thick with disappointment and rising voices. Some arrived still in their uniforms, others in faded Millennium T-shirts from picnics past. All brought their worries, their hopes, their sense of betrayal.

Puan Aida, the union chairperson, stood at the front, her voice steady even as her eyes revealed fatigue. "The bonus is not mere generosity—it is our shared contract, our mutual respect. In hardship, commitment matters most. Our agreement must mean something, especially now." Around her, heads nodded, some with resolve, some in sorrow.

From the back of the hall, a young technician, Amin, spoke up, his words raw and trembling. "People tell us to be grateful just to have jobs, but were we not promised dignity as well as wages? This bonus—my family counts on it. I promised my father I'd help him repair his roof this year. How do I tell him now that I cannot keep my word?"

A middle-aged accounts clerk, Hafizah, added quietly, "We worked through every MCO. We braved the factory floor when others stayed home. Yes, we are grateful to be employed, but must gratitude mean silence? Isn't our voice part of what this union stands for?"

Tension simmered. Younger members exchanged pointed remarks with union executives. "What good is a union if it cannot defend what was agreed?" snapped one. Another retorted, "The company never missed a year—not even in the 2008 crisis. Why now? Why so sudden?" Some accused the executives of being too soft, others of being out of touch with the daily struggles on the ground.

It threatened to boil over—until Encik Rahman, an elder union member with streaks of grey in his hair and a calming presence, raised his hands. "Enough," he said softly but firmly. "This is not the time to turn on one another. We must remember what the Prophet taught—sabar (patience) in trial, and syukur (gratitude) in plenty. 2020 has been a year of tribulation for all—remember the MCOs (Movement Control Order), the fear, the empty roads and shuttered shops. Many lost more than just a bonus—they lost loved ones, their health, their livelihoods."

The room quieted, and for a moment, the pain of disappointment met the wisdom of perspective. But the ache did not fully subside. Another elder added, "We have been blessed, yes, but we must also hold to what is right. Sabar is not surrender. Our collective voice is meant to uphold justice—not just for ourselves, but for the ones who come after."

The union's officers huddled after the meeting, drafting a letter late into the night. It did not rage, but it did not yield. "To pay nothing is not within the spirit of the agreement," it read, insisting on dialogue, respect, and the restoration of trust.

Outside, as members drifted home, *WhatsApp* groups flickered with fresh debates. Some argued that patience was a virtue, others that justice must be pursued. On Facebook, elders shared quotes about resilience and gratitude; younger staff posted memes mixing frustration with hope—#SolidarityInHardship.

By midnight, the union hall stood empty, the echoes of the night lingering. This December would be remembered not for laughter and bonuses, but for a reckoning with hardship, a community learning that sabar and syukur could coexist with the dignity of standing firm for what was promised.

MANAGEMENT'S REFLECTION

Meanwhile, in a brightly lit conference room far from the murmurs of the union hall, Millennium's leadership was embroiled in their own sleepless reckoning. It was late—close to midnight—and the city outside was eerily quiet under the weight of pandemic curfews. But inside, the mood was anything but calm.

Managing Director Encik Ahmad Syafiq hunched over a laptop, his tie loosened, sleeves rolled. The projected spreadsheets on the screen glowed crimson—losses, cash flow gaps, lines upon lines of hard choices.

He broke the heavy silence. "If we pay from borrowed funds now, do we risk everything next year? Are we failing our people, or protecting their future?" His voice was taut, the kind of weariness that comes only from genuine care—and the impossibility of a perfect answer.

Puan Siti Mariam, the Finance Director, looked up from a pile of printouts. "I have checked every angle. Even a partial bonus would eat through our reserves. If this pandemic lingers… we may not make payroll by June. Yet—how do we ask people to trust us, if we break a promise now?"

Encik Farid, Head of HR, spoke with measured concern. "Our people are not just numbers. They have children entering university, parents to support. There's a moral dimension here—Madani values remind us to put compassion and collective wellbeing at the centre. But how do we explain that 'no bonus' now could mean 'no layoffs' later?"

A younger senior executive, Zainal, tapped his pen nervously. "If we communicate with honesty—show the numbers, open the books—maybe they will understand. But the union expects solidarity. Social media is watching. If we are seen as uncaring, we lose their trust forever."

Tension surfaced as another senior manager, Encik Liew from Operations, voiced a sharper worry. "But what about productivity next year? Demoralised staff might cut corners, or worse—leave for competitors. We can't build back stronger if the heart of our company is broken."

The room paused as Dr. Nurul, Corporate Affairs, quietly offered, "We need to listen before we talk. Invite the union to see what we see. Engage them in the decision, not just inform them of it. This is the spirit of Madani—mutual respect, consultation, ihsan. It's not just about crisis management, but about trust-building for the long term."

Encik Ahmad Syafiq looked around the table, searching for consensus and finding only heavy responsibility. "I wish I could fix this with numbers. But we're talking about trust—years of goodwill built on that blue factory floor. We must show we are with them, even if our hands are tied."

The leadership debated long and hard—could they offer an advance on next year's bonus if things improved? Should they give a token, even a grocery voucher, as a gesture of solidarity?

Could they hold a townhall, and answer every question, however uncomfortable? Some voices urged caution, others for bold honesty.

In the end, the decision was not a victory, but a burden to carry together. Encik Ahmad closed the meeting with a sigh: “We will draft a message that speaks from the heart. We will open our doors for dialogue. We cannot erase the pain, but we can face it—side by side, as one family, with sincerity and Madani spirit.”

As the managers filed out, the clock nearing 2am, each carried the weight of difficult choices. The hardest part was not the numbers, but the knowledge that behind every line in red, there were lives, dreams, and hopes—stranded, but still looking for a sign of compassion in uncertain times.

NEGOTIATION AND IMPASSE

Virtual meetings became the new battleground. Though each participant appeared in their own small square on the screen—some in office chairs, others at kitchen tables, a few with children occasionally darting into the background—the intensity bridged every digital divide.

Union representatives began with stories that were raw and deeply personal. Amin, the young technician, spoke with restrained emotion: “We wore masks until our faces bled, sanitized our hands until they cracked, and kept the factory running through each wave of MCO. The bonus isn’t a luxury—it’s our lifeline, a symbol of the promise Millennium made to us all.”

Puan Aida’s voice was calm but resolute. “This isn’t just a policy. It’s trust. Every December, our people plan their year around what is written in Article 26. For some, it’s a child’s school fees; for others, it’s the only chance to help elderly parents. When the agreement is not honored in hardship, what is its worth in the best of times?”

The management team, led by Encik Ahmad Syafiq, looked weary but stood their ground. “We don’t take this lightly. We’ve scrutinized every sen, every ledger. If we pay the bonus from borrowed money, we might not be able to guarantee jobs next quarter. We’re opening our books, line by line, to be fully transparent with you all.”

Puan Siti Mariam, Finance Director, interjected with clear evidence: “Here are the numbers—projected cash flows, anticipated losses. This is not about unwillingness, but about survival. Our core duty is to safeguard everyone’s livelihood, not just for this season, but for years to come.”

Arguments sharpened, each side presenting facts that cut deep. Some union members demanded, “Even a token—anything—would show we matter.” A senior executive replied, “Even a small payout could tip us into the red and force hard choices no one wants to make.”

Tension simmered. Voices sometimes rose, the virtual air thick with frustration and sorrow. Yet, even through the heat, reminders of akhlak and adab al-ikhtilaf surfaced. Encik Rahman, a respected elder on the union side, softly quoted, “Let us remember the adab of disagreement. As Allah says in Surah Al-Hujurat, ‘Lower your voice, lest your deeds become worthless without you realizing.’ We fight for our rights, but never at the expense of ukhuwwah.”

On the management side, Dr. Nurul nodded, adding, “Let’s not let this impasse destroy the spirit we have built over years. The CA is important, but our unity—our ukhuwwah—is even more so. At the very least, if we cannot agree tonight, let us disagree with dignity. May Allah accept our striving as amal soleh."

As dialogue stalled, Puan Aida summarized the impasse with a sigh that everyone felt: "If the CA is not honored now, what is its worth in the hardest of times?" There was a long silence, broken only by the faint hum of a laptop fan. Management countered, "Is it justice to save the fruit but kill the tree, or vice versa? We are choosing between two kinds of pain."

In that pause, something softer emerged—a willingness, perhaps, to keep the channel open even when solutions seemed out of reach. A union elder concluded, "Let us leave tonight's meeting as we began—as people of akhlak, of shared purpose. We may not have answers, but we still have our adab and our ukhuwwah. May that be our reward, even as we strive for a just outcome."

Screens blinked off one by one. The verdict was still uncertain, but the way forward—marked by restraint, mutual respect, and the intention for good—remained intact, a quiet testament to the deeper values that sustained Millennium through its longest winter.

THE COURTROOM: BALANCING LAW, *MASLAHAH*, AND THE FUTURE

The dispute soon reached the Industrial Court, transforming a virtual battleground into a physical arena of solemnity and high stakes. The hearing room—sterile, fluorescent-lit, packed with masked observers—buzzed with an undercurrent of anticipation. A row of documents lined each table, witness statements stacked beside legal texts, as both parties prepared for a reckoning.

On one side sat the Union's legal team, led by Senior Counsel Tuan Haji Firdaus, known for his unwavering advocacy. On the other, Millennium's Management Counsel, Puan Sharifah, renowned for her strategic clarity and composure under fire. At the center presided Yang Arif Puan Sri Zaleha, the Industrial Court chair, respected for her depth of insight and a reputation for weaving Tawhidic values into her rulings.

The air was thick as proceedings commenced.

Tuan Haji Firdaus stood, voice measured but carrying a sharp edge:
"Your Honour, we are not here for charity, but for justice. Article 26 was not a promise easily made, nor easily broken. For decades, Millennium has honored this sacred contract—regardless of external storms. If hardship is a license to suspend obligations, then no worker's rights are safe. The pandemic, with all its trials, did not erase the ink from our agreement."

He gestured to the stack of precedents and past CAs, his words ringing with conviction:
"This is more than compensation. It is the heart of trust between employer and worker. To break it now would set a precedent that contracts matter only in good times. Your Honour, we urge the Court to protect the sanctity of this trust."

Management's Counsel, Puan Sharifah, rose in response, her voice calm but pressing:
"With respect, Your Honour, we submit that the magnitude of the pandemic cannot be overstated. This was not a calculated risk, but an existential threat—one which, if not navigated wisely, would jeopardize the company's very survival and the jobs of every single employee."

She turned to financial reports, waving a highlighted page:
“These numbers are not tactics; they are our reality. To insist on the bonus, under these circumstances, would be to dig the grave of the very organization that sustains its workers. Justice, we submit, must consider *maslahah*—the broader good, the welfare of the whole, not just the letter of the law.”

Tempers flared as cross-examinations began. Union counsel pressed the management on every expenditure, suggesting alternatives—selling assets, negotiating short-term loans, drawing down reserves further. Management rebutted with sobering projections and the risks of insolvency, warning of layoffs that would cause greater harm.

At one point, both counsels spoke at once, each trying to sway the Court with rhetorical force. Yang Arif Puan Sri Zaleha intervened, raising her hand for silence:

“Counsels, this Court will not entertain diversionary tactics or rhetorical flourish. Remain focused on your evidence, your arguments, and the principles at stake. Let us not forget: contracts are sacred—but so too is the principle of *maslahah*. True *ummatic* stewardship is measured in adversity, not comfort. We are here to seek not only legal justice, but a higher justice—one which holds the trust of both parties and the welfare of the wider community.”

The hearing resumed with renewed focus. Both sides presented further documentation—emails, meeting minutes, financial ledgers, even testimonies from workers and management alike.

As the day wore on, the atmosphere shifted from adversarial to almost contemplative. Even as the arguments retained their heat, there was a sense that this was not a battle to be won or lost, but a trust to be navigated—where every word, every submission, echoed far beyond the walls of the courtroom.

The outcome remained uncertain. But for everyone present, it was clear: in this room, justice was not a simple equation, but a living test of character, principle, and the very spirit of *ukhuwwah* that had defined Millennium in both celebration and crisis.

THE HUMAN DIMENSION
In private moments, away from the courtroom’s formal glare, the emotional toll on all involved began to show.

After a particularly long day of arguments, Karim, a senior union member with twenty years on the shop floor, found himself sitting across from Ahmad Syafiq, the Managing Director, in a quiet corner of the court’s waiting room. Karim’s voice was weary, edged with a sorrow that years of camaraderie could not erase. “It’s hard to explain to my children why loyalty can be unrewarded. For years, I’ve told them Millennium is different—that we take care of each other. Today, I felt I lied to them.”

Ahmad Syafiq met his gaze, the fatigue in his eyes mirroring Karim’s. “Karim, I wish it hadn’t come to this. None of us wanted to be on opposite sides of this table. Next time, let’s talk before it gets this far. Whatever happens in court, we have to find a way to rebuild trust.”

In the hallway, union members gathered in tight knots, emotions running high. Some younger members vented frustrations:

“What’s the point of a union if we can’t secure what’s written in black and white?”
“It’s not just about money—it’s about respect. About not being treated like afterthoughts.”

A few raised their voices, anger overtaking restraint. But Encik Rahman, the elder union member, stepped in, spreading his arms to gently quiet them. “Brothers, sisters—this is not our way. Remember, our *akhlak* is our strength. We speak for justice, yes, but we don’t forget adab. Anger will not win what wisdom and patience might.”

Union officials took these words to heart, pulling the more agitated aside. Puan Aida, the chairperson, reminded them quietly: “The Prophet taught us to speak kindly, even in disagreement. If we lose our manners, we lose ourselves. We’re being watched—not just by the Court, but by our children, by the next generation.”

In the company’s temporary office nearby, senior managers met with their counsel, Puan Sharifah, and other representatives. A young executive, Zainal, blurted out, “Do they not see how hard we’ve tried? The numbers just don’t add up. I wish they’d listen.”

Puan Sharifah, ever the diplomat, counseled patience: “Adab is not a weakness. Let them speak. Let them feel heard. Our duty is to listen, to respond with clarity—not to match frustration with frustration.”

Even in court, as arguments reached fever pitch, there were moments when both counsels struggled to maintain restraint. At one point, Tuan Haji Firdaus, representing the union, raised his voice a notch too high, drawing murmurs. But before the judge could intervene, his colleague, a junior counsel, lightly touched his sleeve and whispered, “*Akhlak*, Tuan. The workers are watching.”

Back in the corridor, as the day drew to a close, some union and company members exchanged tired but respectful nods. A cleaner, overhearing the debates, shook her head and said softly, “You know, I hope they find a way. We’re all just trying to feed our families.”

As dusk settled outside, the judge passed by and paused, offering a quiet reminder to both parties: “When adab is present, even hard truths become easier to bear. We will reach a decision, but your conduct today will linger in the hearts of all who witnessed it.”

And so, beneath the surface of dispute, there ran a deeper current—of restraint, mutual persuasion, and a shared hope that, despite the hardship, they might still uphold the higher standard of *ukhuwwah* and dignity for which Millennium had always been known.

EPILOGUE: PATHWAYS TO RESILIENCE

Weeks passed, and though the court’s verdict remained pending, the dispute still cast its shadow over Millennium. The canteen, once a symbol of fractured hopes, was now filled with a hum of anticipation. In a gesture that broke with the tension of recent months, both management and union came together to co-host a “Solidarity Luncheon,” inviting every employee—from top executives to the newest recruits—to share a meal, memories, and a renewed commitment to dialogue.

Tables were pushed together, blue-and-yellow Millennium banners draped overhead, and the usual neat rows gave way to a mingling of uniforms, ties, and family faces. The air, heavy at first, gradually lifted with the aromas of *nasi lemak*, *satay*, and *teh tarik* (bubbled milk-tea). People spoke softly at first, but soon, laughter began to seep in—hesitant, then genuine.

The union and management teams sat side by side at the center table, their proximity a visible symbol of thawing relations. Some older employees, their faces etched with both worry and relief, recalled the bonus days with bittersweet humor. "Remember last year's tug-of-war?" one joked. "This year, I think the real tug-of-war was in the boardroom!"

Yet beneath the banter, there was an unspoken resolve—a recognition that what bound them was more than just paychecks or agreements, but a shared journey through uncertainty and sacrifice.

Before the meal, Ahmad Syafiq, the Managing Director, rose to address the room. His voice was clear, but trembled slightly with emotion:
"We have been through a storm, and I will not pretend the pain was small. But we have not given up on each other. Let this trial bind us in ihsan and foresight—not suspicion. The real bonus, my friends, is not a figure in the ledger, but the trust we choose to renew, again and again. As we move toward our next collective agreement, let's ensure hardship provisions are clear. Let's promise to face the next challenge together, not across the aisle, but side by side."

A hush fell, the kind that comes when people sense history being made. Puan Aida, the union chairperson, stood beside him—shoulder to shoulder. She spoke with a steadiness that had carried so many through the darkest days:
"Let us move forward—united not by what we have lost, but by what we still strive to build, for the ummah and for future generations. We have argued, yes, but we have not broken. Millennium's strength is in our *ukhuwwah*, our shared respect, and our refusal to let crisis steal our humanity. Let's learn from this—not just as negotiators, but as partners, as family."

Applause broke out, gentle at first, then swelling as even the most skeptical members joined in. Some eyes glistened, others embraced quietly. In corners of the hall, old disagreements softened into handshakes, even hugs. Social media filled with photos of the luncheon: a cake iced with the words "Stronger Together," a sea of smiles under blue-and-yellow bunting, and the hashtag #MillenniumSolidarity trending across local feeds.

That afternoon, a new chapter began—not defined by past grievances, but by a shared pledge to never let hardship find them divided again. At Millennium, the real bonus—the only one that mattered—was the rediscovery of unity, foresight, and a trust that, battered but not broken, would carry them all into a future of hope.

DISCUSSION QUESTIONS

1. How should Millennium Company balance its contractual obligations with its broader responsibilities as an employer and community stakeholder during crisis periods?
2. What are the legal and ethical implications of suspending agreed benefits during unprecedented events?
3. How can future collective agreements be structured to provide clarity, flexibility, and trust for both sides?
4. What lessons can organizations draw about crisis communication and stakeholder engagement from Millennium's experience?

ISSN: 2810-2327 e-ISSN: 2710-7175
Received: 26 April 2025 Reviewed: 5 May 2025 Revised: 14 July 2025 Accepted: 17 July 2025

The Spirit of Aid

Suhaimi Mhd Sarif
International Islamic University Malaysia
E-mail: albanjari@yahoo.com

Dolhadi Zainudin
International Islamic University Malaysia
E-mail: dolhadi@iium.edu.my

Yusof Ismail
International Islamic University Malaysia
E-mail: yusof.edu@gmail.com

Yayan Firmansah
Universitas Darussalam (UNIDA) Gontor Indonesia
E-mail: yayanf@unida.gontor.ac.id

Rohaziah Yahya*
SRI Ibn Kathir
E-mail: rohaziah_yahya@hotmail.com
Corresponding author

Abstract
This case study explores the dynamic interplay between the National Union of Workers (NUW) and the Federation of Commercial Financiers (FCF) in the financial sector in Malaysia with the focus on the events surrounding the "Festival Aid" initiative during the tumultuous post-pandemic period. Tracing the roots of both organizations to Malaysia's economic transformation in the 1960s, the case study argued that the respective missions, organizational structures, and the evolution of collective bargaining practices shaped by decades of partnership and occasional conflict. Using case study narrative and observation, the case pointed at the arguments triggered by FCF's unilateral withdrawal of Festival Aid after its initial success, the subsequent legal and moral challenges, and the conciliation process that followed. The analysis foregrounds the adoption of MADANI values—sustainability, prosperity, innovation, respect, trust, and care & compassion—showing how both employers and unions grappled with questions of technical obligations versus moral stewardship, the role of dialogue and trust in industrial relations, and the transformation of adversarial bargaining into a model for inclusive, responsible social partnership. The case study concludes with lessons for policymakers, employers, and unionists seeking to harmonize economic resilience with social justice in a rapidly evolving, multicultural society.

Keywords: Industrial Relations, MADANI Values, Collective Bargaining

Introduction

The history of industrial relations in Malaysia’s financial sector has been marked by a delicate balance between economic ambition and social responsibility. At the center of this evolution stands the National Union of Workers (NUW), founded in the early 1960s to unify and protect the interests of employees in the rapidly expanding sectors of banking, capital markets, insurance, and investment. As the nation diversified its economy and positioned the financial sector at its core, the NUW grew in strength and scope, forging industry-defining collective agreements and welfare initiatives that would become benchmarks for worker protection, equity, and professional development.

In parallel, the Federation of Commercial Financiers (FCF) emerged as the unified voice of financial institutions, balancing advocacy for employer interests with commitments to sectoral stability, regulatory innovation, and workforce development. Over the decades, the relationship between NUW and FCF matured from cautious negotiation to collaborative partnership, with collective bargaining at its heart. This process has not been without conflict—especially as new challenges emerged, from digital disruption and shifting workforce demographics to the unprecedented shocks of the COVID-19 pandemic.

The “Festival Aid” initiative, conceived during the pandemic as a symbol of solidarity and resilience, became a focal point for these tensions. When the FCF moved to withdraw this aid after its inaugural success—citing economic constraints and legal technicalities—what followed was more than a dispute over entitlements: it was a profound test of trust, values, and vision. Heated debates, legal wrangling, and emotional union meetings underscored the gap between technical compliance and ethical leadership. Yet, as this case study reveals, the crisis also opened the way for renewal—ushering in a new era of engagement shaped by the national MADANI philosophy, which emphasizes sustainability (mampan), prosperity (kesejahteraan), innovation (daya-cipta), respect (hormat), trust (keyakinan), and care & compassion (ihsan).

Through detailed narrative and analysis, this study examines how these values influenced the negotiation process, catalyzed a shift from confrontation to conciliation, and set new standards for industrial harmony. In doing so, it offers insights not only for Malaysia but for any society seeking to reconcile economic competitiveness with the imperatives of justice, dignity, and collective well-being.

National Union of Workers (NUW)

The National Union of Workers (NUW), established in the early 1960s during Malaysia’s rapid economic transformation, quickly distinguished itself by focusing on the financial, capital market, investment, and related sectors—including banking, insurance, securities, and regulatory bodies. Its core mission has always been to unify and safeguard the interests of employees working at the heart of Malaysia’s evolving economic infrastructure. Throughout the 1980s and 1990s, as the country’s economy diversified and the financial sector became central to national growth, NUW’s membership expanded to encompass a wide spectrum of professionals. The union prioritized sector-specific collective bargaining, legal advocacy, and welfare programmes tailored to the demanding environments of banking and capital markets. Its achievements include setting industry benchmarks for wages and benefits, advancing maternity and parental leave, promoting workplace diversity, and defending workers’ rights in high-profile legal cases—all while maintaining strong alliances with regional and international financial sector organizations.

In the modern era, NUW has continued to adapt to significant challenges, including digitalization, automation, fintech disruption, and shifting workforce demographics. The union has advocated for regulatory reforms and social protections tailored to the needs of high-skilled, contract, and gig workers within finance and investment. During the COVID-19 pandemic, NUW played a pivotal role in negotiating wage subsidies, safe work protocols, and virtual dispute resolution mechanisms. Its influence extends through tripartite engagement with government and employers, policy advocacy on ESG (environmental, social, and governance) standards, and ongoing professional development for its members. Today, NUW remains at the forefront of championing workers' rights and well-being, balancing global competitiveness with social responsibility, and supporting Malaysia's vision for a just, inclusive, and sustainable society within its vital financial and capital market sectors.

Organization of National Union of Workers (NUW)

The National Union of Workers (NUW) is organized to ensure robust governance and effective representation for employees in Malaysia's financial, capital market, and investment sectors. At its apex is the Supreme Council, elected by delegates from affiliated branches, which sets the union's overall direction and oversees major policies and negotiations. Supporting the council is the Executive Committee, comprising senior officials and department heads who handle daily management and strategic decision-making. Key roles include the President, Deputy President, General Secretary, and Treasurer, as well as department heads for industrial relations, legal affairs, training, organizing, research, and policy. Notably, the Head of Industrial Relations—exemplified by leaders like Sister Nadia Yusof—plays a crucial role in negotiations, dispute resolution, and ensuring compliance with labor laws and collective agreements.

Beneath these governing bodies, NUW employs a dedicated team of professional executives and administrative staff who manage daily operations at headquarters and regional offices. This team includes industrial relations officers, legal officers, membership and welfare officers, training facilitators, and communications specialists, all working collaboratively to serve members' needs. The union's structure is further strengthened by active branches in major financial centers, each managed by a local committee and serving as the first point of contact for members. To address specialized issues such as ESG, digitalization, or gender empowerment, NUW also convenes advisory panels and ad hoc committees drawing on both internal and external expertise. This comprehensive, multi-tiered organization enables NUW to blend strategic leadership with grassroots engagement, maintaining its reputation as a responsive and innovative union in Malaysia's dynamic financial landscape.

Situation

A monsoon evening battered the heart of Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia's bustling financial capital. The city's skyline shimmered beneath sheets of rain, while in the modest offices of the National Union of Workers (NUW), tension was palpable. The windows rattled and flickered with each thunderclap, as inside, union leaders grappled with more than just the weather: they faced a crisis of trust.

At the head of the room, Sister Nadia Yusof, Head of Industrial Relations, paced in front of a cluster of unionists, her hand gripping a battered Memorandum of Agreement (MOA). This document, forged during the throes of the COVID-19 pandemic, was meant to be a symbol of solidarity between workers and management—a promise to support the rank-and-file during unprecedented times. Now, it had become a flashpoint.

“They’re saying it was a one-time gift,” Nadia whispered, incredulous, her words almost drowned by the storm. “A gift?”

The phrase stung every ear in the room. Around the table, faces grew tight—not with anger, but with disbelief. The “Festival Aid,” once celebrated as a beacon of resilience, now threatened to become a symbol of broken promises.

Brother Haris, the union’s Deputy President, shook his head, his brows furrowed. “A gift?” he echoed. “You don’t build trust on gifts. You build it on commitments. People made plans for their families. Some of our members paid off debts. Others repaired their parents’ homes, bought school uniforms for their kids. All because they believed in this promise.”

At the corner of the table, Mei Lin, a veteran committee member, let out a sigh, her fingers drumming restlessly on the wood. “My branch in Klang has already started calling. They want answers. Raya is coming. What do I tell them?”

A young organizer, Faizal, glanced at his notebook. “Can they really just… stop it? The MOA said ‘subject to review’—but nobody told us there wouldn’t be anything at all.”

Nadia stopped pacing and faced the group, her eyes fierce despite the exhaustion. “Review doesn’t mean erase. We asked for dialogue; they sent a memo. No explanation. No empathy. Just—‘not this year.’”

Thunder rumbled. Rain battered the glass harder, as if echoing the turmoil inside.

Brother Haris leaned forward. “We need to push back, Nadia. This isn’t just about money—it’s about dignity. They can’t hide behind technicalities.”

Another member, Suresh, spoke up for the first time. “What’s our move? Social media? Press conference? Legal action?”

Nadia raised the battered MOA for all to see. “This—this was supposed to mean something. If we don’t act, what will our members think? That we accept broken promises quietly?”

The group fell silent for a moment, each contemplating the weight of expectation on their shoulders.

Mei Lin broke the silence. “We stand together. We demand a meeting. And if they won’t listen, the public will.”

Nadia nodded, her resolve hardening as lightning flashed beyond the window. “Tonight, we plan. Tomorrow, we fight for our members. Festival Aid was not a handout—it was hope. And we won’t let them take hope away so easily.”

As the storm continued its relentless assault on the city, inside NUW’s modest meeting room, a different kind of storm gathered strength—a storm fueled by solidarity, a sense of justice, and a determination not to let trust be washed away by corporate indifference.

The Federation of Commercial Financiers (FCF)

The Federation of Commercial Financiers (FCF) was established in the early 1960s, as Malaysia embarked on a period of rapid economic growth and diversification. Initially formed by leading commercial banks, finance houses, and leasing firms, FCF later expanded to include investment and asset management institutions. Its central aim was to provide a collective voice and strategic leadership for employers in the evolving financial services landscape. Over the decades, the federation broadened its membership to embrace retail and investment banks, credit cooperatives, mortgage providers, and fintech firms, reflecting its adaptability to sectoral shifts, globalization, technological advancement, and regulatory changes.

FCF's core functions are wide-ranging and have been instrumental in shaping Malaysia's financial sector. It acts as the unified representative of the industry in national and sectoral forums, advocating members' interests with government, regulators such as Bank Negara Malaysia and the Securities Commission, and labor unions. The federation leads collective bargaining and industrial relations, standardizing employment terms and resolving disputes with unions such as the National Union of Workers (NUW). FCF also drives policy development on key sectoral issues—including digital transformation, ESG standards, risk management, and workforce development—regularly publishing guidelines, codes of conduct, and white papers. Beyond policy, it provides legal advisory, training, and capacity-building programmes, helping member institutions keep pace with emerging trends in fintech, cybersecurity, anti-money laundering, and sustainable finance.

Over the past sixty years, FCF has earned a reputation for industrial relations leadership and regulatory influence. It has maintained sectoral stability through constructive engagement with unions, negotiated numerous collective agreements, and minimized industrial actions through proactive dispute resolution. The federation's input has shaped banking reforms, consumer credit regulations, and financial inclusion strategies, while its commitment to workforce development has elevated professional standards throughout the sector. FCF has also championed innovation and ESG integration, guiding members through technological change and supporting green finance and diversity initiatives. Today, FCF continues to lead Malaysia's financial sector towards sustainable growth, talent development, and a resilient, inclusive financial ecosystem, balancing employer interests with responsible social partnership.

The Seeds of Madani

For nearly half a century, the Federation of Commercial Financiers (FCF) stood not just as a beacon of economic leadership, but as a silent architect of social well-being. Its headquarters—an elegant, sunlit building in central Kuala Lumpur—was both a command center and a living museum. The marble floor beneath the gallery of black-and-white photos was worn smooth by the passage of leaders, unionists, and everyday workers.

One image stood out among the gallery: the signing of the first collective agreement in 1975, a moment that marked the birth of industrial peace. Haji Abdul Rahman, now retired, often guided new employees on 'legacy walks' through the hall. He would pause before a photo of men and women—Malay, Chinese, Indian—holding hands in solidarity.

"Look here," he would say, "We didn't always agree, but we always respected each other. *Hormat*, that's what carried us through the tough times."

Yet, legacy was more than nostalgia or fond memories. By the 2010s, FCF and the National Union of Workers (NUW) had co-created progressive agreements that reflected both contemporary needs and timeless values. *Mampan* (sustainability) was embedded through recycling drives, paperless workflows, and annual ESG audits—these became part of corporate DNA (DNA is *Deoxyribonucleic Acid*, which is the molecule that carries genetic information in living organisms. Corporate DNA refers to the core values, culture, and unique characteristics that define an organization's identity and guide its behavior). An annual ESG audit is a yearly assessment that reviews how well an organization complies with environmental, social, and governance standards. ESG stands for Environmental, Social, and Governance. It is a framework used to assess how organizations and companies manage risks and opportunities related to these three important factors. The environmental component evaluates how a company impacts and manages the natural environment, considering aspects such as climate change policies, carbon emissions, energy efficiency, waste management, water conservation, pollution control, and biodiversity protection. The social aspect examines how a company manages its relationships with employees, customers, suppliers, and local communities, including issues like fair wages, diversity, product safety, responsible sourcing, community engagement, and human rights. Meanwhile, the governance element focuses on the leadership, accountability, and ethical practices of a company, covering areas such as board structure and diversity, transparency, executive compensation, shareholder rights, and anti-corruption measures. The importance of ESG has grown significantly in recent years, as investors, companies, regulators, and stakeholders increasingly seek to ensure that organizations operate responsibly and sustainably. Investors use ESG criteria to identify companies that are likely to be sustainable and responsible in the long term, while companies adopt ESG practices to enhance their reputation, reduce risks, and attract investment. Ultimately, society as a whole benefits when organizations are environmentally conscious, socially responsible, and governed by strong ethical standards.

Kesejahteraan (prosperity) refers to a state of overall well-being, security, and sustained quality of life for individuals and communities. *Kesejahteraan* (prosperity) in an organization or workplace is achieved through supportive leadership, fair policies, and a healthy, inclusive work environment that promotes employee well-being and growth. At this organization, it was cultivated through annual family days, scholarships for staff children, and community microloans that extended the organization's reach well beyond office walls.

Keyakinan (trust) became a hallmark of all negotiations. *Keyakinan* (trust) is the confidence and belief in the integrity, reliability, and competence of individuals or the organization as a whole. Its nature is built on honesty, transparency, and consistency in actions and communication. In an organization or workplace, trust forms the foundation of strong relationships among leaders, employees, and teams, enabling effective collaboration and open dialogue. Trust is important because it fosters a positive work environment, increases motivation and productivity, reduces conflict, and enhances overall organizational performance and resilience. Even when discussions grew tough, honesty prevailed, and disagreements ended with shared meals, not bitterness.

Ihsan (care and compassion) is the principle of doing good, showing kindness, and going beyond what is required to help others with sincerity. Its nature involves empathy, generosity, and a genuine concern for the well-being of others. In an organization or workplace, *ihsan* is reflected in supportive leadership, fair treatment, and a culture that values helping colleagues and addressing their needs. *Ihsan* is important because it nurtures trust, loyalty, and a positive environment, leading to greater employee satisfaction, reduced conflict, and higher organizational morale and performance. *Ihsan* is equally important, realized through volunteer days for flood relief, mental health workshops, and the famous “Ramadan Basket” for the asnaf, distributed by both union and management.

MADANI (**M**ampan-Kesej**A**hteraan-**D**ayacipta-Horm**A**t-Keyaki**N**an-**I**hsan) values weren’t just taught—they were lived. ***D**aya cipta* (innovation) thrived through hackathons for fintech solutions, while *horm**A**t* (respect) was evident in cross-cultural celebrations within the company atrium. Deepavali, Chinese New Year, Gawai, Hari Raya—all were open to every staff member, regardless of faith or background.

During the 2019 annual general meeting, Mr. Lim, the FCF President, addressed the crowd:

“Legacy isn’t just bricks and contracts. It’s the spirit of MADANI—*mampan* in every investment, *kesejahteraa*n for every family, *daya-cipta* in every problem, *hormat* in every disagreement, *keyakinan* in every handshake, and *ihsan* in every decision. This is how we build a nation, not just a company.”

As the crowd dispersed after Mr. Lim’s inspiring speech, a hum of curiosity and confusion filled the hall. Aida leaned over to her colleague and whispered, “Did you catch what Mr. Lim said about MADANI? I’ve never heard that term before. Is it a new company policy or something?” Farid, scratching his head, replied, “I’m not sure, but it sounds deep. He mentioned things like *kesejahteraan* and *ihsan*… I think those are values? Maybe it’s linked to the government’s new direction?” At another table, Ms. Wong turned to her team and admitted, “Honestly, I thought legacy was just about profit and property. This MADANI thing sounds more like… national values? How do we apply that in our department?”

Meanwhile, Ramesh, only half-listening as he scrolled through his phone, muttered, “I’ll just wait for HR to send a memo. All these new buzzwords every year, lah.” Siti, visibly excited as she jotted down notes, exclaimed, “I love the idea! If we can bring more care and trust into our daily work, it’ll be so much better for everyone. I hope the management really means it.” Encik Hassan, sharing his thoughts with a group of friends, reflected, “*Mampan*, *kesejahteraan, daya-cipta*… It’s not just about money, apparently. Maybe Mr. Lim wants us to be more people-focused. But can we really change the culture just by talking?” Ahmad, quietly to himself, pondered, “*Keyakinan* in every handshake, *ihsan* in every decision… I wonder if my manager will start practicing that.” Nearby, Jenny looked puzzled and said, “So… is MADANI a new business strategy, or is it more like a vision statement? I hope someone explains it in simple terms during the next meeting.” The mix of questions, skepticism, and hope showed just how new and thought-provoking the idea of MADANI was to everyone in the room.

Test of Foundations

The crisis came like a monsoon—sudden, relentless, and humbling. By March 2023, the pandemic’s aftershocks rocked Malaysia’s financial sector. Inflation soared, the ringgit weakened, and whispers of retrenchments drifted through the corridors of every financial institution. Indeed, the crisis has struck Malaysia’s financial sector unexpectedly and powerfully in March 2023, with the lingering effects of the pandemic causing inflation to rise, the ringgit to lose value, and fears of job cuts spreading throughout financial institutions.

In the bank lobby, Salmah, a union steward, noticed that more staff were eating alone, silent over their cold *nasi lemak*. She saw anxiety etched into every conversation—especially among single mothers and elderly tellers who feared their livelihoods were at risk. As news of the crisis spread, uneasy conversations broke out across the office. “Have you seen the latest inflation numbers? My groceries are costing nearly double now,” complained Sarah, shaking her head in disbelief. Ahmad, glancing at his phone, muttered, “The ringgit keeps dropping. I hope it stabilizes soon, or our savings will shrink even more.” Near the pantry, Mei whispered anxiously to her friend, “They say retrenchments might start next month—do you think our team is safe?” Her friend replied, “I don’t know, but everyone seems tense lately. Let’s just do our best and hope for the best.” The atmosphere was heavy with uncertainty, as colleagues shared their worries and tried to reassure one another amidst the storm of bad news.

An emergency Zoom conference was quickly convened as rain tapped against the windows. Leaders from both FCF and NUW logged in.

“Some members are skipping meals to pay rent. We need relief, not just promises,” insisted Brother Anand from the NUW.

“We’re squeezed too—our profits are down. Yet, I see what you see. The struggle is real. How can we act with ihsan and keyakinan, so none are left behind?” responded Puan Sharifah, FCF’s HR Director.

Tension built as proposals flew back and forth: cash advances, job-sharing, pay cuts. The debate grew heated, with passions running high. But a moment of stillness fell when Amir, a junior officer, quietly spoke up.

“My mother always says, ‘true *kesejahteraan* is when your neighbor doesn’t go hungry.’ We must do something visible, something that reminds everyone of their dignity.”

From this moment of reflection emerged the decision for “Festival Aid.” *Daya-cipta* (innovation) inspired a unique solution: a one-off payment equal to a month’s salary for every unionized employee, to be distributed during major religious and cultural celebrations. This initiative was not about bonuses; it was about compassion and respect—*ihsan* and *hormat*—recognizing the humanity in every background. *Mampan* (sustainability) was also a guiding principle: the funds would be carved from executive bonuses and a temporary pause on renovations, ensuring a sustainable, equitable reallocation.

That night, the WhatsApp group was abuzz:
“This means I can celebrate Deepavali with peace of mind,” wrote Ramesh.

“My kids can buy new baju for Raya. *Terima kasih*, union dan management,” added Fazira.

In a public livestream announcement, Brother Anand’s eyes shone with emotion as he declared:
“This is not charity. This is Madani in action—where every Malaysian, regardless of faith, has dignity and hope.”

A New “Social Contract”

The announcement of Festival Aid ignited a surge of hope across Malaysia. News travelled fast—spilling from news tickers to WhatsApp groups, radiating through suraus, cafés, and city trains. Social media erupted in a wave of gratitude and pride: #FestivalAid,

#MadaniForAll, and #KitaJagaKita painted timelines in every language and dialect. Workers—often unseen, too often unheard—now felt the gaze of the nation on them, their labor honored, their struggles acknowledged. The collective pulse quickened, charged with new expectations and a renewed sense of unity. For the first time in years, the air was alive with belonging.

In a humble community hall in Penang, Mazlan's extended family had gathered for a *kenduri* to mark the occasion. The laughter of children echoed as elders exchanged prayers of thanks. Mazlan stood near the window, gazing out at the rain-soaked street, and turned to his wife, his voice filled with emotion.

"This is more than help, *sayang*," he said softly, "It's a sign that our voice matters. For once, both union and company put people first, above all else. It's a new day."
His wife smiled, tears glimmering in her eyes. Just then, their daughter Nurin piped up, waving her SDG club notebook.

"It's Goal 1, Daddy—No Poverty! And Goal 8—Decent Work! My teacher said this is *daya-cipta*, too—solving big problems in new ways."

Mazlan drew her into a gentle embrace, pride and hope mingling in his heart. All around them, neighbors shared stories of repaired homes, school fees paid, and tables laden for the coming festival—proof that dignity, once restored, lifts entire communities.

Meanwhile, at an office tower in Kuala Lumpur, the Festival Aid announcement set the stage for a different kind of gathering. At a packed post-pandemic town hall, employees filled the airy meeting space, some lingering by the coffee urns, others lining the walls. As the floor opened to questions, a young analyst, Sofia, stood up—her voice steady but earnest.

"I grew up during COVID. My friends and I, we want more than just stability. We want green jobs, fair pay, respect for every background, and a real voice in how things are done. Will you make room for us?"

The question hung in the air—bold, searching. Mr Lim, who'd started his own career as a junior clerk in a small branch, felt a wave of nostalgia and responsibility. He met Sofia's gaze, then spoke with quiet conviction:
"Sofia, your voice is the future. We're listening, and we will go further.
— *Mampan* - Greener practices, less waste, and ethical investments.
— *Kesejahteraan* - Well-being programs, not just wages—childcare, health, and financial counseling.
— *Daya-cipta* - Digital upskilling for all; hackathons for real-world solutions.
— *Hormat* - Open-door policies for all grievances, and an anti-discrimination taskforce.
— *Keyakinan* - Transparent reporting, clear communication—no more surprises.
— *Ihsan* - Community outreach, support for the needy, always compassion before profit."
A murmur of appreciation swept the room, and someone in the back started to clap.

In that spirit, the Joint ESG-Madani Task Force was launched, its pledge clear: new collective agreements would turn these values into action, not just aspiration. Teams rolled out energy audits and paperless workflows (mampan). Hiring panels embraced inclusivity and career mentoring (kesejahteraan, hormat). Every quarter, innovation labs welcomed wild ideas and practical solutions (daya-cipta). Mental health programs and care initiatives (ihsan) were now standard, not special favors. Transparent dashboards and annual town halls (keyakinan) kept everyone informed—and involved.

And in the heart of Kuala Lumpur, beneath the stern faces of the founding financiers, new photographs found their place in the building's gallery—workers of every ethnicity, smiling shoulder to shoulder, digital screens lit up with the colors of progress, a single banner declaring, "Madani: Everyone Thrives."

Malaysia's financial sector, once defined by tradition and tested by adversity, was being reshaped by hope, youth, and a determination that no one—regardless of background—would be left behind. The story of FCF and NUW had grown beyond contracts and disputes. It became a living testament to the unyielding strength of Madani values: sustainability, well-being, creative problem-solving, respect, trust, and compassion. The journey was far from over, but for the first time, every worker, every family, every voice felt part of a shared, unstoppable story.

The Unravelling

Yet, beneath the surface, uncertainty lingered. The 2023 MOA included an important clause: "The Festival Aid quantum for 2024 and beyond may be reviewed, subject to prevailing economic and operational conditions."

By January 2024, with the pandemic's grip loosening, the FCF issued a terse circular:
"The 2023 Festival Aid was a goodwill gesture reflecting exceptional circumstances and does not constitute a recurring entitlement."

The effect was immediate. Members of the NUW, many from vulnerable backgrounds, felt blindsided and betrayed. Social media erupted: hashtags like *AidIsNotAGift* and *RespectForAllFestivals* trended for days. Even junior employees at FCF member banks began sharing the union's message, spurring a wave of public sympathy and internal debate.

As uncertainty over the Festival Aid turned to resentment, emotions flared in both the union meeting room and the FCF boardroom. The union members, feeling betrayed after years of sacrifice and hardship, voiced their frustrations and heartbreak. Yet, amid the rising tension, Shahril—a seasoned member—reminded everyone of the virtue of sabar, urging patience and caution. "Brothers, sisters, let's not lose sight—anger won't feed our families. We need answers, not more pain." His calming presence invited the group to pause and reflect, invoking the need for redha—accepting hardship with dignity. Meanwhile, across the negotiation table, management too wrestled with their own anxieties and reputational risks. Mr. Lim, recognizing the fragility of trust, underscored the importance of dialogue and understanding, warning that without it, the very foundation of industrial relations would crumble.

When both sides met in a tense joint session, the voices were sharp, but the yearning for *ukhuwwah*—the spirit of brotherhood and unity—emerged. Shahril's call to restore harmony and protect dignity reminded everyone that the true purpose of industrial relations is not conflict, but collective resilience and mutual compassion. Ms. Mariam and Mr. Lim, moved by this spirit, agreed to seek a compromise—reviewing the numbers together and focusing on solutions instead of blame. As the meeting drew to a close, the storm of anger subsided, replaced by a quiet resolve. Both sides, weary yet hopeful, remembered that true progress is built on patience, acceptance of life's trials, and the enduring bond of *ukhuwwah*, even—especially—when times are hardest.

Collective Bargaining experiences NUW and FIF

The collective bargaining process between the Federation of Commercial Financiers (FCF) and the National Union of Workers (NUW) has long been a cornerstone of industrial harmony in Malaysia's financial sector. Initiated in the early 1960s, this process has evolved into a highly structured and collaborative negotiation—reflecting the sector's complexity and the professionalism of both organizations. Typically, collective bargaining begins with NUW's Supreme Council and Executive Committee convening with input from their grassroots branches and advisory panels, who surface the pressing needs and aspirations of their diverse membership. Parallelly, FCF's leadership, representing a broad alliance of commercial finance institutions, prepares its mandate by consulting with its member organizations, legal advisors, and HR specialists to ensure any proposed agreement aligns with business sustainability, sectoral standards, and regulatory expectations.

Negotiations are characterized by a mix of robust debate and mutual respect, often involving several rounds of formal meetings, working group discussions, and, at times, mediation facilitated by government representatives. Throughout the past fifty years, each round of negotiations has led to the creation of new collective agreements—reflecting shifts in economic conditions, regulatory landscapes, technological advancement, and evolving workforce needs. These agreements have covered not only wages and benefits but also critical issues such as job security, parental leave, training opportunities, digitalization impacts, ESG commitments, and workplace diversity. Each new version of the collective agreement stands as a testament to the adaptability and foresight of both FCF and NUW, who, despite changes in leadership, priorities, and external pressures, have consistently prioritized sustainable sectoral growth and social partnership.

The result of this enduring process has been a succession of collective agreements—each shaped by the leadership styles and negotiation strategies of successive presidents, general secretaries, heads of industrial relations, and executive members on both sides. These agreements have contributed to sectoral stability, minimized industrial action, and fostered a culture of trust and innovation across the financial industry. The ongoing renewal and refinement of collective agreements demonstrate the capacity of both FCF and NUW to manage change, embrace new challenges, and uphold the interests of both employers and employees, solidifying their reputations as standard-bearers for constructive industrial relations in Malaysia's evolving financial landscape.

Union Strategy Room

Inside the NUW headquarters, the air was thick with anger and heartbreak. Nadia sat at the head of the worn wooden table, her fingers drumming nervously as she scanned the anxious faces before her. The buzzing of fluorescent lights overhead seemed to underscore the tension in the room. Mei Lin, her silver-streaked hair pulled tightly back, leaned forward, her frail hands clenched but her eyes burning with the fire of years spent fighting for others.

"They call it goodwill," Mei Lin's voice trembled, the weight of experience and heartbreak mingling in each syllable, "but is it goodwill when people have built their hopes around it? My members in Seremban—they used that aid to send their children to school, to prepare for festivals, to repair the leaking roofs of old family homes. This is not a game to them. It's not a handout. It's a lifeline."

At the far end of the table, Faizal shifted in his seat, his youthful face creased with worry. He was new to the struggle, but not to hardship. He spoke up, his voice small but resolute, "But… was it ever guaranteed for 2024? The MOA says, 'may be reviewed.' I… I just don't want to give false hope."

Nadia turned to face him, her posture softening as she caught the vulnerability in his eyes. "Did you plan your Raya shopping last year with that aid in mind, Faizal?" she asked gently, the sternness fading from her features.

He nodded, unable to meet her gaze, his voice barely a whisper. "Yes, ma'am. It was the only way we could repaint our house. My father was so proud, just for that little bit of color on our walls."

Nadia swallowed hard, her own emotions threatening to break through her composure. "Exactly. People make plans. You don't dangle hope in front of people just to snatch it away at the last minute. That isn't just business—that's manipulation. We are talking about real lives, real families. There must be a line between profit and principle."

Suddenly, the tension broke as Brother Anand, who had watched the debate with furrowed brow, rapped the table with a heavy hand. The sound cut through the uncertainty like a clarion call. "Enough," Anand declared, his baritone steady and commanding. "We need to act. Our members deserve clarity and respect. This is more than a contract—it's *amanah*. It's a sacred trust, a moral responsibility. We owe them not just words, but action."

The room stilled, each person silently absorbing the gravity of his words. Outrage became resolve. In that charged silence, the NUW leadership found new strength, united not only by their anger, but by their commitment to justice—and to one another.

The Legal Battle

When the FCF caught wind of the growing unrest among union members, they wasted no time in seeking the advice of their legal team. The boardroom was tense, silent but for the shuffling of documents and the clicking of pens. Within days, their counsel responded with precision, citing the letter of the law. Because the 2023 Memorandum of Agreement had not been deposited with the Industrial Court under Section 16 of the Industrial Relations Act, it was legally binding only for 2023, with no further enforceable obligations for the years to come. The Industrial Court's written judgment arrived on a rain-soaked morning—delivered in crisp, clinical legalese that made no room for empathy, no space for the struggles and aspirations of everyday workers. For the FCF, it was a technical victory. For the union, it was a gut punch.

In a dimly lit café near the union's headquarters, Mei Lin sat with her phone pressed to her ear, listening to the news. Her expression was bleak. She shook her head, frustration lacing her voice as she muttered to a colleague, "They hide behind technicalities, but our members' dignity isn't technical. We're more than a line in a contract."

That afternoon, Nadia summoned an emergency meeting. The union office, usually humming with quiet camaraderie, was now thick with anxiety and anger. She stood at the front, trying to bring order to the surging voices. Around the table, tempers flared and disappointment hung heavy in the air.

Faizal, fists clenched on the table, was the first to speak. “So what now? Do we just issue a press statement and hope for sympathy? Or do we demand new negotiations? I can’t face my team with nothing to show but excuses.”

Anand, his jaw set, eyes burning with resolve, replied, “We do both. We show them that a missing stamp on a piece of paper can’t silence us. This is about more than aid—it’s about respect and our future. We rally our members. We engage the media, yes. And if we must, we go to Parliament. We let the whole country see what’s at stake.”

A tense silence followed, each person weighed down by the enormity of the moment, yet galvanized by the shared sense of purpose. The air was electric with unspoken promises—not to back down, not to let a technical loophole define their worth. The meeting ended not in defeat, but in steely determination, as union leaders rose one by one, ready to fight not just for entitlements, but for dignity, justice, and the soul of their community.

FCF Boardroom

The contrast could not have been sharper. In the sleek, air-conditioned halls of FCF headquarters, senior HR leaders sat in a hushed circle, the crisis outside filtered through digital screens and performance reports.

Ms. Lim Jia Wei, Head of Corporate Affairs, broke the silence:

“Their latest post has gone viral—over 30,000 views. Even some of our staff are sharing it.”

Mr. Adrian Khoo, Chair of Industrial Relations, was unmoved:

“The aid cost us RM32 million. It was a generous gesture. We cannot afford to make it a precedent.”

Mr. Fazli, an HR director, interjected:

“We did what was necessary during the pandemic. But to turn this into an annual right—what’s next? We have wage restructuring ahead.”

David Cheong, the wise elder, leaned forward, his voice barely above a whisper:

“This isn’t about the money. It’s about morale. If our staff believe we don’t care, we risk more than money—we risk the soul of our institutions.”

A heavy silence settled. Adrian finally spoke:

“Prepare a formal statement. Reframe the aid as a recovery initiative, not a permanent entitlement. But—let’s also meet the union. Quietly. No media. Just… talk.”

Lim looked up, surprised:

“You want to open the door again?”

“Not open it. Just peek through. We need to understand how deep this goes.”

The Conciliation

In the quiet, official air of the Department of Industrial Relations, mid-January brought together two groups whose destinies, though often at odds, were intertwined. Rain tapped gently at the windowpanes, a reminder of the world outside and the hope for renewal within. Both sides entered with the weight of their communities on their shoulders—faces set, yet eyes searching for a resolution that would bring peace, not victory. The government mediator, a dignified figure with decades of experience, opened with a calm authority:

"Industrial harmony," he intoned, "is more than the absence of conflict. It is the presence of trust—trust that we build together, not through demands or defenses, but through shared humanity."

Anand, representing the union, spoke first, his voice steady but full of heart. "Festival Aid was never just about ringgit and sen," he said, looking around the room. "It gave our members dignity—the ability to fulfill their duties, not only as employees, but as children, as parents, as neighbors. It's a matter of justice and, more than that, it's what it means to live as a community, supporting each other through life's ups and downs." His words drew murmurs of agreement, a gentle wave of empathy rolling across the table.

Adrian, for FCFI, answered with thoughtful caution, choosing his words with care. "The agreement we made was clear: it was a one-off measure, shaped by extraordinary circumstances. Anything more must be anchored in sustainability, built on consensus and transparency. We owe that to our employees, but also to the health of the sector as a whole." He met Anand's gaze, not with defiance, but with an openness that invited dialogue.

As the discussion continued, a warm light from the late afternoon sun began to filter into the room. Voices grew gentler, more reflective. "Legal obligations are not enough," Anand continued, "what about our moral responsibility? Are we not, at our core, here to build a future rooted in respect, solidarity, and kindness?"

Adrian replied, more softly now, "We do care, truly. But if every gesture, even one given in crisis, is seen as permanent, we risk losing the flexibility needed to weather future storms. We must think of the sector's long-term resilience. Surely, there is a middle ground."

It was then that Faizal, a young union member, stood—his voice trembling, but filled with quiet resolve. "Last year, for the first time in many years, my parents smiled. Because of the aid, we could repair our home, share a meal, feel included in the spirit of the season. This year—there's silence. Not even a word. I'm not angry. I'm just… disappointed." For a moment, time seemed to stand still. The mediator saw the shift, the human cost finally real and immediate.

With gentle wisdom, the mediator leaned forward, his tone almost parental: "Perhaps we cannot change the past, but we can choose a better future. Can we at least agree to formalize *Festival Aid* in the next agreement? Set clear, fair conditions—let it be an act of shared respect, not obligation, and let it sustain the harmony we all wish to protect?"

Adrian drew a slow, deliberate breath, looking at his colleagues and then at Anand. "We're open to discussing it," he said earnestly, "if we can ensure it is fair, responsible, and does not jeopardize anyone's future." His posture softened; he, too, was weary of discord.

Anand did not hesitate. He reached across the table, extending his hand—a gesture heavy with meaning. "Let's work together. Let's write a new chapter—one built on trust, on ukhuwwah, on MADANI values. For our people, for the sector, for the country we all serve."

The handshake was met with warm smiles, some misty eyes, and a collective exhale of relief. In that moment, there were no adversaries—only Malaysians united in their hope for harmony, ready to forge a legacy of trust, compassion, and shared progress for generations to come.

Turning point

Outside, the storm had subsided, and rays of sunlight began to pierce the once-ominous clouds, casting a gentle warmth across the city skyline. The mood inside reflected this change—an uneasy but hopeful calm settling over both the union and management teams. As the virtual meeting came to an end, there was no triumphant handshake or applause, only a cautious acknowledgment that a new path was possible. Both sides, still wary from the tension, agreed to embark on drafting a new Collective Agreement. This agreement would finally address Festival Aid with honesty and transparency: spelling out who would be eligible, how the quantum would be determined, and, crucially, embedding clear mechanisms to ensure the aid's sustainability in good times and bad.

For FCF, this meant publicly recognizing the recurring necessity of Festival Aid, not as an optional gesture, but as a meaningful commitment tied to both operational realities and their responsibility to the workforce and society. On their part, NUW's leaders accepted the challenge of guiding their members towards a new mindset—one built on shared values and mutual trust. Their focus would shift from confrontation to collaboration, from suspicion to partnership, so that the spirit of ukhuwwah could flourish within and between their organizations.

This fragile consensus did more than resolve a single dispute; it set the stage for a new precedent, one rooted in deeper philosophical and spiritual foundations. Drawing from Tawhidic epistemology, the new agreement would honor the unity of purpose and the ethical imperative to serve the common good. Inspired by the ideals of ummatic excellence, both parties aspired to embody not just technical competence but also integrity, accountability, and care. Guided by the national Madani vision, the process would be animated by the pursuit of sustainability, prosperity, innovation, respect, trust, care, and compassion—transforming industrial relations from a battleground of interests into a living example of shared humanity and resilience.

Epilogue

The "Spirit of Aid" case does more than recount a dispute over Festival Aid; it challenges everyone involved to grapple with profound questions about the meaning and purpose of their roles in society. For employers, it is a call to look beyond quarterly earnings and market share. Are organizations merely stewards of profit, or do they also bear the sacred trust of nurturing the well-being, dignity, and even the national identity of their workforce? As Mr. Lim paced his office, the city's bustle visible through his window, he felt the weight of this responsibility—a reminder that leadership is not just about balance sheets, but about the lives that depend on every decision made.

For union leaders, the conflict served as a moment of introspection. Was advocacy simply about pushing for higher payouts and tougher negotiations, or was it about something deeper?

Was it about sowing justice, building lasting *ukhuwwah*—the brotherhood that binds workers beyond contracts—and nurturing a new generation of leaders who see unity, not discord, as the path forward? In the meeting halls, voices echoed these thoughts. Mariam and Shahril exchanged glances, understanding that true strength for the union came not from confrontation, but from fostering solidarity, knowledge, and a sense of shared mission.

Policymakers, too, were drawn into the debate, their task complicated by the pace of change and the rising tide of public expectation. Could existing frameworks truly accommodate the ethical ambitions of a society aspiring to MADANI ideals—where justice, prosperity, and compassion are not mere slogans, but living realities? Or was it time for new models of partnership—fresh ways of bringing employers, workers, and government together in service of the common good? In Putrajaya, civil servants pondered these questions, their stacks of documents suddenly charged with renewed significance.

And for the future leaders—the young staff who tweeted, questioned, and dreamed—there was a stirring sense of possibility. How might *Tawhidic* epistemology, with its insistence on unity, accountability, and divine purpose, and the values of MADANI—innovation, respect, care, and sustainability—shape not only the resolution of conflicts, but the very culture of the financial sector? Could they, perhaps, chart a new course that merged spiritual depth with practical creativity, even in the heat of dispute?

This spirit found expression at the next NUW townhall, where bold banners declared, "Festival Aid is not a one-time gift—it's a shared commitment." In a moving display of unity, staff of all backgrounds—Malay, Indian, Chinese; Muslim, Hindu, Christian—stood together. "Raya, Deepavali, Christmas, or New Year—respect should never be seasonal," they chorused, their voices rising above the hum of daily life.

As the sun lit up Kuala Lumpur's towers and glass facades, the financial sector itself stood at a crossroads. The choice was stark: would the path forward be defined by the cold letter of the law, or by the luminous spirit of unity? In that moment, the future seemed suspended—poised between precedent and possibility, between self-interest and the enduring call of shared humanity.

Note: This case is a work of fiction for educational purposes. Any resemblance to real persons or organizations is purely coincidental.

DISCUSSION QUESTIONS

1. What underlying values and societal expectations are at stake in the "Spirit of Aid" dispute?
2. How do Tawhidic epistemology and the ummatic mind reshape the roles and obligations of unions and employers?
3. How does the case illustrate the challenges and opportunities of Malaysia Madani in modern industrial relations?
4. In what ways should collective agreements evolve to support both sustainability and social cohesion?
5. What actionable steps can organizations take to institutionalize care and compassion without jeopardizing financial prudence?

ISSN: 2810-2327 e-ISSN: 2710-7175
Received: 30 May 2025 Reviewed: 16 June 2025 Revised: 14 July 2025 Accepted: 17 July 2025

X-Factory Ethical Dilemma in the Age of Automation

Jamak Amrollahifar
Alfa university College, Malaysia.
Email: dr.jamak@alfa.edu.my

Guo Yajie
School of Management,
Guangzhou College of Technology and Business, China.
Email: guoyajie202210@163.com

Tarekol Islam Maruf*
Department of Business Management and Technology,
Alfa University College, Malaysia.
Email: dr.tarekol@alfa.edu.my
**Corresponding Author*

Abstract
This case study explores the ethical and emotional challenges faced by a senior technical engineering leader, Mr. Jason, in a manufacturing company in Miami, USA. With over two decades of service, Jason is tasked by top management to propose cost-saving solutions amid financial pressure and the advent of automation. His solution involves reducing manual labour through automation—yet it creates a moral dilemma, as his recommendation could lead to job loss for his close friend and long-time co-worker. This case highlights the human side of technological transitions and invites discussion around ethics, leadership responsibility, and strategic decision-making.

Keywords: Ethical challenges, strategic decision-making, leadership responsibility

---

Introduction to Automation and Ethics
Automation has surged in manufacturing worldwide. According to the International Federation of Robotics (IFR), 517,385 new industrial robots were installed globally in 2021 – a 31% increase over the prior year – raising the total to about 3.5 million operational robots. Asia dominates this trend (accounting for about 74% of new installations, with China alone adding roughly 268,000 robots that year). While such adoption promises higher efficiency and lower costs, it also creates ethical challenges. Studies predict that by 2030 up to 800 million jobs worldwide could be affected by automation and AI. Displaced workers may suffer financial hardship, loss of purpose, and widening inequality.

Leaders must therefore balance technological gains with social impact. Surveys show that a majority of firms (around 60% of all firms, and 85% of large firms) have made automation a strategic priority. Faced with this reality, many scholars argue that automation programs should serve human welfare as well as business goals. For example, one analysis warns that purely cost-focused automation tends to fail and can be "detrimental to business" if it ignores the workforce. In the words of Tracy Mayor (2019), companies should design automation systems that drive both growth and social cohesion. In short, technology decision-making today is as much an ethical challenge as a technical one. Against this backdrop, we consider X Factory's case: a company intent on automation, and a leader wrestling with the human consequences of that choice.

Case Background

X Factory is a mid-sized manufacturing company in Miami, Florida. It produces consumer appliances and has operated profitably for decades. Mr. Jason is its Head of Technical Engineering and has spent over 20 years at the firm. He is well-respected for his expertise and has led numerous efficiency projects. Equally important, Jason has deep personal ties within the factory. Over the years he has become close friends with many floor workers, mentoring some younger colleagues. In particular, one of his oldest friends is a general factory worker who relies on this steady job to support a family.

Despite past success, X Factory is now facing financial strain. Global competition has intensified, and rising material and labour costs have squeezed margins. The board has warned that without improvements, the company risks losses and even closure. In response, senior management – influenced by industry trends – identified automation as a key strategy to cut costs. This parallels broader manufacturing trends: for instance, a 2024 CFO survey found that around 60% of firms worldwide have implemented labour-replacing automation in the past year, and two-thirds plan to do so. Recognizing this, X Factory's executives asked Jason to propose a technical plan for modernizing production.

Jason dove into the assignment with both professional zeal and personal concern. He analysed existing processes and confirmed that automating certain manual tasks could significantly boost productivity and reduce costs. However, he also understood the implications: the proposed robots and machines would replace human operators – including his friend's position. Thus, Jason faced a conflict: should he advance a solution that could save the company (and many jobs indirectly) at the expense of several loyal employees? This setup establishes our main characters and stakes: a dedicated technical leader (Jason), a supportive colleague with a family (the friend), and a company caught between profit pressures and human impact.

The Rise of Automation at X Factory

Over the past few years, X Factory had begun to invest incrementally in automation. Initially, management approved small upgrades – a computer-controlled press here, a basic conveyor there – which yielded modest efficiency gains. Encouraged by early success and aware of modern manufacturing trends, the board then decided on a larger automation initiative. Robotics vendors were invited to propose solutions, and a cross-functional team was formed to plan the transition. Jason led this team.

Jason and his team mapped each production line and identified the most labour-intensive tasks. They found, for example, that heavy lifting of components, repetitive welding processes, and manual packaging were major cost centres. He consulted industry reports and trade shows. The IFR's world robotics report made clear that manufacturing sectors, especially electronics and automotive, were installing robots at unprecedented rates. Motivated by these benchmarks, Jason drafted a detailed project proposal. It called for installing robotic arms, automated guided vehicles (AGVs), and vision-based quality inspectors in targeted work cells.

He presented a preliminary analysis: the new equipment could potentially double throughput on certain lines and cut variable costs by up to 40%. However, the plan also showed that roughly 15–20 of the general worker positions would become redundant (depending on how tasks were reorganized). Jason anticipated resistance. Some veteran operators were already nervous; union leaders worried about precedent. He recalled high-profile cases in other factories: for instance, a Foxconn plant in China famously reduced its workforce from 110,000 to 50,000 by adding robots. Another report noted Foxconn's plan to deploy one million robots within a few years to cope with rising wages. These examples loomed in Jason's mind as he refined the plan.

Nevertheless, given the company's urgency, the automation project moved ahead. Top management gave Jason a timeline and budget: they expected at least a 20% reduction in operating costs within a year of deployment. Jason was directed to consider layoffs only as a last resort. This directive signalled that the company was aware of the human cost, at least rhetorically. As the first machines were ordered, lines were rearranged, and training schedules made, X Factory's shift toward a high-tech operation was set in motion – a transformation that held promise and peril in equal measure.

Strategic Decision-Making under Pressure

With the mandate clear, Jason employed a structured decision-making process. He gathered data on output, cycle times, and labour costs for each department. For each candidate automation, he built cost–benefit analyses. For example, he estimated that installing a robotic welder on Line A would require a $2 million investment but might increase welding capacity by 50% while reducing manual labour by 8 workers. At that rate, the payback period would be just two years. Meanwhile, he considered less drastic improvements, such as reorganizing shift schedules or adding a second assembly line on a discretionary spending basis.

Jason did not rely solely on spreadsheets. He convened meetings with production supervisors, operators, and even floor technicians to validate assumptions. When he calculated, for example, that a new AGV system would free up 5 operators from material transport, he discussed this with those operators. They pointed out potential bottlenecks the model had missed – such as loading times and maintenance downtime. Jason iterated his analysis to include these real-world factors. He was mindful of advice from experts: one management article noted that leaders under stress should "trust in a methodical decision-making process" rather than guess.

Throughout this phase, Jason also considered the people factor. He remembered that studies warn against "cost-focused" automation without regard for employees. A purely cost-driven plan might meet financial goals on paper but could flounder if worker morale collapses. To avoid this, Jason built in communication checkpoints. He scheduled weekly briefings where he shared high-level updates with team leaders (without revealing sensitive data). He even walked the plant floor with a laptop, showing line diagrams and soliciting input. This transparency was strategic: research shows that survivors of layoffs lose trust unless leaders ramp up communication and support. By involving the shop floor in planning (for example, asking for ideas on how displaced workers might be retrained), Jason aimed to reduce fear and build ownership of the change.

Despite these efforts, pressure mounted as deadlines loomed. Jason often worked late into the night, weighing financial urgency against human concerns. He conferred with mentors, including a retired engineer who once handled a similar transition. His mentor stressed the importance of integrating ethics into decisions: "Data and math matter, but don't forget the people who trust you," the mentor advised. In private reflection, Jason acknowledged feeling moral distress: a conflict between knowing the right thing to do (help the company survive) and the fear of hurting innocent colleagues. This emotional tension was an undercurrent in all his strategic planning.

Ethical Dilemma: Leadership vs. Loyalty

Jason's situation crystallized into a classic moral conflict: Should he prioritize the organization's well-being or his personal loyalty to friends? On one side was professional duty: as a leader, Jason was expected to help ensure X Factory's viability. From a utilitarian perspective, automation could save the company and preserve many jobs in the long run, outweighing the short-term loss of a few positions. On the other side was personal ethics: Jason felt a deep obligation to protect his friends and long-time colleagues. Abandoning them to unemployment felt unjust, violating principles he valued. This tension – maximizing overall good versus upholding loyalty to individuals – has no easy formula.

Jason considered various ethical frameworks. Under a utilitarian lens, he could argue that proposing automation is justified by the greater good of company survival and the livelihoods of most employees. A deontological viewpoint, however, might focus on duties and rights: he had a duty to the company (and its shareholders), but he also had a duty as a friend and mentor not to harm his colleagues. Ethics of care would emphasize empathy and relationships, suggesting Jason give special weight to his friend's plight because of their personal bond. Indeed, leadership experts note that ethical leaders should make decisions "based on the right thing to do for the common good, not just what is best for the bottom line". This means considering the needs of communities and employees alongside profit. Jason could not ignore these perspectives without feeling like he was betraying his own moral standards.

In practical terms, Jason grappled with questions: Is it right to present a plan knowing it will cost a friend his livelihood? Could he negotiate an alternative outcome? His loyalty made him wonder if he was complicit in harming someone he cared about. Yet his leadership role made him accountable for the welfare of the whole company. This dilemma created a profound internal conflict. Jason realized that emotional intelligence was key: he needed to honestly confront his feelings of guilt and sympathy while remaining clear-headed about his responsibilities. A high-EQ leader recognizes the importance of values like loyalty and fairness, even under pressure. In this crucible, Jason learned that making an ethical decision required both rational analysis and compassionate understanding.

Organizational Response and Stakeholder Impact

When Jason formally presented his final automation proposal to senior management, the reactions illustrated the competing priorities. The CEO and COO focused on the numbers: they lauded the anticipated efficiency improvements and applauded Jason's thorough analysis. They saw the plan as essential to reducing the company's cost structure. The CFO quickly noted that the projected savings could reverse recent quarterly losses.

In contrast, representatives from Human Resources and production began to raise practical concerns. They asked: How many workers will be laid off, and which positions? What retraining will be offered? They probed Jason: Can any of the displaced personnel be redeployed? At this point it was clear that Jason's friend (a line operator) would lose his role if the plan proceeded unchanged. The factory workers' union also caught wind of the plan and contacted HR with questions about seniority and severance. Internally, the shop-floor atmosphere grew tense: rumours of impending layoffs circulated. As one commentator put it, workers who survive a downsizing often feel "demoralized" and insecure. In fact, a survey by Brandon Hall Group found that 59% of companies reported a high impact on employee morale after workforce reductions, and 47% saw a major hit to trust and loyalty.

Recognizing these concerns, top management agreed to bolster Jason's plan with employee-centric measures. They mandated three initiatives:

Communication
Jason and HR would conduct town-hall meetings to explain the business rationale for automation, outline the timeline, and answer questions openly (Research indicates that frequent, transparent communication is critical to maintaining trust during downsizing).

Retraining and Redeployment
A training program would be funded. Displaced workers (including Jason's friend) would receive first priority to learn new skills relevant to the automated processes, such as robot maintenance, quality inspection, or data monitoring. The production schedule was temporarily slowed to accommodate training hours.

Support and Severance
For those unable to be reassigned, the company offered severance packages above the legal minimum, plus job placement assistance (career counselling and job fairs). This was meant to cushion the personal impact.

Over the next weeks, X Factory slowly implemented these steps. Jason personally spoke to his friend before any decisions were final, reassuring him that the company would invest in retraining. He also answered questions from other workers in smaller groups, trying to alleviate anxiety. Despite these efforts, some tension remained. Employees who would keep their jobs still worried about "survivor guilt," and the friend in question felt grateful but uneasy about transitioning to a new role. Outside the plant, community stakeholders (such as local officials) noted the shift: the plant was modernizing, but some families feared the loss of middle-class jobs. The company's reputation was on the line.

In summary, X Factory's organizational response highlighted the broad stakeholders affected: the board and investors (focused on cost), the remaining employees (concerned about security and fairness), the departing workers (needing support), and the community. By integrating communication and support measures, the company aimed to manage these impacts. The case illustrates that automation triggers a ripple effect across many interests, and responsible leadership must address them in tandem.

Comparative Industry Insight
X Factory's situation is not unique; global data and case examples shed light on how other firms handle similar dilemmas. Worldwide, the shift to robotics has been dramatic. As shown in Figure 1, China's factories far outstrip all others in robot installations. In 2021, Asia accounted for 74% of new industrial robot deployments. China alone installed 268,000 robots that year. By comparison, the United States installed about 50,000 robots in the Americas

region (including North and South America). These numbers underscore that manufacturers globally are aggressively pursuing automation.

Figure 1: Annual installations of industrial robots in 2021 (thousands of units) for the top global markets. Source: IFR World Robotics 2022.

Concrete company examples illustrate the human stakes. Consider Foxconn, a giant electronics assembler. In 2011 Foxconn's CEO announced a goal of deploying one million robots over three years to offset rising labor costs. By 2016 reports indicated that a single Foxconn factory had cut its headcount from 110,000 to 50,000 through automation. Foxconn publicly stated it would retrain workers for higher-skilled roles, but outsiders questioned the social impact of such aggressive automation. Foxconn's case serves as a caution: if too many workers are "replaced" quickly, it can create social and morale problems, even if the company saves money.
In contrast, other companies have pursued more balanced approaches. For example, Amazon's warehouses use robots to carry heavy loads, but human workers still perform flexible, skilled tasks like picking and packing. As the MIT Sloan study notes, Amazon exemplifies a "performance-driven" automation: robots and humans work side by side, with each doing what they do best. Toyota offers another model: at Toyota's plants, workers are empowered to perfect manual processes first, and only after processes are solidified are robots introduced. This "worker-centered" approach yields both efficiency and employee involvement.

A striking small-business example is Marlin Steel (a custom metal parts maker in the U.S.). Marlin invested in robotic welding but simultaneously implemented extensive worker training and job redesign. The result: order capacity tripled without laying off any workers. In other words, Marlin's robots "created jobs" by enabling the company to win more contracts.

Industry data align with these anecdotes. The IFR reports that global robot installations have doubled in the past six years, and are growing across sectors (not just automotive). A 2024 survey found that 88% of firms cite productivity improvement as the main driver of automation. However, only a minority report that their adoption is aimed primarily at cutting labor costs. The key insight is that how automation is implemented makes a difference. Companies that integrate retraining and redeployment (employee-centric approaches) tend to maintain higher morale and better public image.

Thus, X Factory can benchmark itself against this industry context. The aggressive "replace workforce" strategy of Foxconn is one extreme, while Amazon/Toyota and Marlin represent more human-sensitive paths. The data suggest that while automation is inevitable, leaders can choose either a zero-sum mentality or a more inclusive strategy. These comparative insights help frame Jason's decision within real-world possibilities and show that responsible automation is both technically feasible and ethically desirable.

Jason's Decision and Aftermath

After much deliberation, Jason recommended a middle course. He supported moving forward with automation (believing the company could not afford to delay) but with strong safeguards for employees. In his final presentation, he proposed phased implementation: automate one department first, pause to evaluate the transition, and then proceed with further rollout. He also secured a commitment from management to retrain as many affected workers as possible.

Crucially, Jason arranged a role for his friend on the new automated line. Instead of being laid off, his friend would be trained and promoted to a machine operator/technician position, responsible for overseeing the robots that replaced him. (For example, he would learn to set up the robotic cells and perform maintenance checks.) Jason argued that the friend's experience and work ethic would make him an excellent fit for this higher-skilled role. Management agreed to provide the necessary training. This solution echoes what MIT Sloan describes as a "worker-centered" automation strategy: technology is introduced with the goal of developing employees, not discarding them.

Over the next six months, X Factory executed this plan. The first wave of robots went into Line A. As predicted, output on that line rose by nearly 40%, and defect rates fell due to the precision of automation. The company's financial reports began to show improved margins. More important, Jason's friend successfully transitioned to his new job and even assisted others in learning the new equipment. By contrast, a few employees on a different team who lost their positions without internal redeployment did express unhappiness, but their departures were minimized.

Gradually, the workforce adapted. Many remaining workers saw that Jason had managed to avoid mass layoffs, which helped restore some trust. Employees started to view the changes not as a betrayal, but as a challenging but ultimately sustainable transformation. The CEO later commented that Jason's balanced approach had "saved the day" – the company met its cost goals without the morale disaster that had been feared. Externally, X Factory's reputation remained strong; local news coverage noted the modernization but highlighted the fact that "long-time employees were retrained for advanced positions."
Jason reflected that his strategy aligned with the "socially responsible" models he had studied. By integrating machines rather than fully replacing people, he achieved a significant productivity boost while keeping his friend employed. It cost more time and effort (especially on training), but it turned out to be feasible. In the end, this outcome validated Jason's belief that he did not have to choose strictly between loyalty and leadership: with creativity and integrity, he found a solution that upheld both.

Lessons in Ethical Leadership and Emotional Intelligence
This case offers several key takeaways.

Balancing stakeholder interests
Ethical leaders evaluate decisions from multiple angles. Jason weighed the company's long-term survival against the immediate impact on individuals. This reflects a stakeholder approach: rather than serving only shareholders, Jason considered employees and the community too. As one expert notes, truly ethical leadership means doing "the right thing for the common good," not just what boosts the bottom line. In practice, Jason's solution shows how a leader can honor loyalty to employees while still safeguarding the organization's future.

Communication and transparency
Open dialogue is critical during change. Jason openly explained the business reasons to his team and shared his plans, which helped ease fear. Research confirms that transparent communication can mitigate the loss of trust that often follows layoffs. By informing workers and soliciting their input, Jason maintained credibility and reduced the shock of change.

Emotional intelligence and empathy

Executing tough decisions requires emotional skill. Daniel Goleman observed that highly effective leaders tend to have strong emotional intelligence. Jason demonstrated this by understanding his own feelings of guilt and managing them, and by recognizing his coworkers' anxieties. He used empathy to find a humane solution (for example, advocating for his friend's retraining). Studies show that organizations led with empathy see higher engagement and retention. Jason's case illustrates that when leaders lead with care, their teams adapt better and organizational goals are ultimately more achievable.

Role modeling ethical behavior
Leaders set cultural norms by example. Jason's willingness to protect his friend's interests showed that the company valued its people. This aligns with the principle that ethical leadership involves fairness and compassion. By prioritizing retraining, Jason sent a message that technology was a tool for empowerment, not abandonment.

Creative problem-solving
Difficult dilemmas often require innovative solutions. Jason did not accept a zero-sum outcome; he found a win–win compromise. This reflects the higher levels of the "automation maturity" model: instead of purely cutting jobs, he enabled employees to work *with* machines. Organizations should be aware that automation can create new opportunities if approached inventively. Jason's approach is akin to Toyota's or Marlin Steel's: using technology to raise productivity *and* job quality.

Learning from others
Jason's success was informed by what he learned from other companies' experiences. The contrast between Foxconn's labor-replacement model and the more worker-centric models (like Amazon and Toyota) provided valuable perspective. Encouraging students to examine these cases (e.g., Foxconn vs. Marlin Steel) can help them appreciate the spectrum of choices. The MIT Sloan "ethics pyramid" provides a useful framework: companies can evolve their automation strategy from cost-only to socially responsible as Jason did.

In summary, ethical leadership in the age of automation is as much about people as it is about technology. Leaders must apply emotional intelligence – self-awareness, empathy, and social skill – to ensure that organizational change honors human dignity. By doing so, they not only do the right thing morally, but also promote sustainable success.

Conclusion
The story of X Factory underscores that technology decisions are inherently human decisions. Automation can transform industries, but it places moral responsibility on leaders to steward the transition. Jason's case shows that it is possible to pursue innovation while remaining loyal to the workforce. He managed to fulfill his duty to the company and his duty to his colleague by coupling efficiency gains with empathy-driven policies. In this way, he exemplified ethical leadership that others can emulate.

More broadly, the case illustrates that companies and leaders should proactively prepare for the social impact of automation. Transparent communication, investment in people, and ethical reflection should accompany every technical upgrade. When leaders integrate ethical reasoning and emotional intelligence into strategy, they can navigate the tension between progress and loyalty. As automation advances across all sectors, such balanced leadership will determine whether technology serves only profit or also people's well-being.

Discussion Questions

1. What ethical frameworks can be applied to evaluate Jason's decision?
2. How can Jason balance professional duties with personal loyalty?
3. What alternative solutions might mitigate the impact on workers while still embracing automation?
4. What role can leadership play in managing emotional intelligence and empathy during organizational changes?
5. How should companies support employees during transitions such as automation?

References

Chyen Yee, L., & Jim, C. (2011, August 1). Foxconn to rely more on robots; could use 1 million in 3 years. Reuters. https://www.reuters.com/article/technology/foxconn-to-rely-more-on-robots-could-use-1-million-in-3-years-idUSTRE77016B/

Creedy, V., & Wolf, S. (2023, July 27). Leading with emotional intelligence drives engagement. DDI Global. https://www.ddiworld.com/blog/leading-with-emotional-intelligence-drives-engagement

Federal Reserve Bank of Richmond. (2024, June 20). U.S. companies ramp up automation and AI as inflation persists [CFO Survey press release]. https://www.richmondfed.org/press_room/press_releases/2024/the_cfo_survey_20240620

IFR – International Federation of Robotics. (2022, October 13). World Robotics report 2022: All-time high with half a million robots installed in one year [Press release]. https://ifr.org/ifr-press-releases/news/wr-report-all-time-high-with-half-a-million-robots-installed

Kirk, V. (2024, February 19). What is ethical leadership and why is it important? Harvard DCE Professional & Executive Development Blog. https://professional.dce.harvard.edu/blog/what-is-ethical-leadership-and-why-is-it-important/

Krimmelbein, F. (2024, October 3). The ethical implications of AI and job displacement. Sogeti Labs. https://labs.sogeti.com/the-ethical-implications-of-ai-and-job-displacement/

Landry, L. (2019, April 3). Why emotional intelligence is important in leadership. Harvard Business School Online. https://online.hbs.edu/blog/post/emotional-intelligence-in-leadership

Mayor, T. (2019, July 8). Ethics and automation: What to do when workers are displaced. MIT Sloan Management Review. https://mitsloan.mit.edu/ideas-made-to-matter/ethics-and-automation-what-to-do-when-workers-are-displaced

Pittman, M. (2023, May 18). Impact of layoffs on employees of the organization: A global perspective from Brandon Hall Group's survey. Brandon Hall Group. https://brandonhall.com/blog-impact-of-layoffs-on-employees/

Wakefield, J. (2016, May 25). Foxconn replaces '60,000 factory workers with robots'. BBC News. https://www.bbc.com/news/technology-36376966

ISSN: 2810-2327 e-ISSN: 2710-7175
Received: 12 June 2025 Reviewed: 19 June 2025 Revised: 14 July 2025 Accepted: 17 July 2025

Qanaah Enterprise: Integrating Faith, Technology, and Sustainability in Smart Organic Farming

Suhaimi Mhd Sarif
Kulliyyah of Economics and Management Sciences
International Islamic University Malaysia
Email: albanjari@yahoo.com

Dzuljastri Abdul Razak
International Institute for Halal Research and Training (INHART)
International Islamic University Malaysia
Email:dzuljastri@iium.edu.my

Dolhadi Zainudin
Kulliyyah of Economics and Management Sciences
International Islamic University Malaysia
Email: dolhadi@iium.edu.my

Rohaziah Yahya*
SRI Khaldun Sdn Bhd
Email: rohaziah_yahay@hotmail.com
Corresponding author

Abstract
This case study explores Qanaah Enterprise, a faith-driven agricultural business in rural Malaysia that embodies Islamic values of *taqwa* (God-consciousness), *qanaah* (contentment), *halalan toyyiban* food ethics, and *Sejahtera* sustainability. Founded by Mr. Qanaah, the enterprise began as a small MD2 pineapple farm and evolved into a values-based model of smart farming integrating artificial intelligence (AI), circular economy principles, and ethical governance. Prioritizing local food security and community well-being over export-driven growth, Qanaah Enterprise serves B40 households with nutritious, chemical-free produce while donating surplus to mosques and orphanages weekly. Through strategic partnerships with local universities and the Department of Agriculture, the enterprise adopts data-driven techniques for sustainable irrigation, pest control, and resource management. The case examines how Islamic principles shape business decisions, including the rejection of *riba*-based financing and unethical scaling strategies. Instead, the enterprise relies on crowdfunding, *waqf*, and *qard hasan* to finance operations, guided by sincerity (ikhlas), service (khidmah), and trust in divine provision (tawakkul). It documents stories of empowerment—such as youth reintegration, single mother entrepreneurship, and differently-abled employment—reflecting a model where farming becomes *ibadah* (worship) and enterprise becomes *amanah* (trust). The farm functions as a learning hub, spiritual platform, and community cooperative grounded in Tawhidic epistemology and *ummatic* excellence. This case offers practical insights for entrepreneurship, agribusiness, and faith-based management education, presenting Qanaah Enterprise as a replicable example of how small-scale enterprises can balance sustainability, technology, and spirituality—creating meaningful impact with purpose beyond profit.

Keywords: Smart Agriculture, ESG, SDG, Circular Economy, *Qanaah*, Sejahtera Sustainability, *Halalan Toyyiban*, Islamic Entrepreneurship

---

Introduction

In an era increasingly defined by climate change, food insecurity, and ethical concerns about industrial agriculture, Qanaah Enterprise emerges not only as a grassroots solution but as a model of ummatic excellence anchored in sustainability, spirituality, and innovation. Situated in rural Malaysia, this small yet visionary enterprise bridges tradition and technology by integrating timeless Islamic values with cutting-edge artificial intelligence in agriculture. Its founder, known affectionately as Mr. Qanaah, embodies the principle of qanaah—contentment with what is sufficient—as both a personal ethic and a strategic business philosophy. Rather than chasing limitless growth or profit maximization, the enterprise is driven by niyyah (intent) rooted in servitude to Allah and service to the ummah. It focuses on producing high-quality, halalan toyyiban, organic food that nourishes the body, sustains the environment, and uplifts local communities.

At its core, Qanaah Enterprise operates with a global mindset grounded in Tawhidic epistemology and ummatic thinking. It views food production not as a business niche but as an integrated mission—one that addresses not only the nutritional needs of society but the spiritual obligations of stewardship (khilafah) over the earth. The farm is treated as a mimbar (pulpit) for dakwah, and every compost heap, irrigation cycle, and harvest is seen through the lens of ibadah. This philosophy elevates agriculture from a trade to a trust (amanah), from a livelihood to a form of continuous worship (ibadah mutasilah). In this way, the enterprise exemplifies how even the smallest plot of land can become a platform for fulfilling both fardu ‘ain (individual obligations) and fardu kifayah (communal duties). Producing food becomes fardu kifayah when done to ensure local and national food security, and ensuring its ethical, clean, and sustainable nature becomes an extension of fardu ‘ain for the farmer who recognizes their accountability to Allah.

This dual awareness—that one’s local actions have global and eternal implications—nurtures an ummatic mindset for ummatic excellence. For Mr. Qanaah, exporting food is not nearly as important as exporting values: sincerity, ethical conduct, resilience, and social responsibility. His decision to employ underserved youth, collaborate with university researchers, and provide training to B40 farmers is rooted in the belief that building human capital is not optional—it is fardu. Similarly, his refusal to adopt exploitative financing or chemical-heavy shortcuts is not a personal preference, but a moral imperative. He often says, “This is not just farming. This is answering Allah’s call to care for His earth and His people.”

Thus, Qanaah Enterprise stands not merely as a model for sustainable agriculture but as a living embodiment of Islamic principles in action—offering a blueprint for how small enterprises can adopt a global ummatic outlook, fulfill their fardu kifayah, and strive for barakah-driven excellence in an increasingly fragmented world. In doing so, it invites others to reimagine their own roles—not just as farmers, traders, or professionals, but as stewards of the ummah, trustees of the earth, and humble servants in the global mission of rahmatan lil ‘alamin.

Company Background

Qanaah Enterprise began humbly—with only a few rows of MD2 pineapples cultivated on a small family-owned plot. Yet from this modest beginning, it has grown into a forward-thinking agricultural venture that integrates Islamic values with cutting-edge technologies and global connectivity. Over time, the enterprise diversified into cultivating fresh chillies, leafy greens, and other local vegetables—deliberately moving away from conventional, input-intensive farming. Instead, Qanaah Enterprise has embraced smart farming through a strategic partnership with a local university and the Department of Agriculture. This collaboration enabled the adoption of AI-powered tools to automate watering cycles, monitor real-time soil health, and implement targeted pest management systems, significantly reducing reliance on chemical inputs and improving water efficiency. This approach not only enhances productivity and ecological resilience but also reflects a long-term investment in ilm, ikhtisas (expertise), and ethical professionalism in agriculture.

What sets Qanaah Enterprise apart is its commitment to ummatic thinking and ummatic excellence in every aspect of its growth. Mr. Qanaah believes that food systems are not just local matters—they are deeply interconnected with global challenges such as poverty, food insecurity, ecological degradation, and ethical consumption. Recognizing this, he has prioritized establishing networks not only among Malaysian farmers but also with like-minded agricultural practitioners abroad. Through farmer-to-farmer exchanges, participation in halal organic food expos, virtual knowledge forums, and cooperative partnerships across ASEAN and OIC countries, Qanaah Enterprise exemplifies the spirit of khilafah—responsible leadership for the betterment of the earth. These networks are more than business alliances; they are manifestations of rahmatan lil 'alamin—spreading mercy and benefit across borders through sustainable, just, and value-driven trade.

In Mr. Qanaah's view, networking and professional development in agriculture are not optional luxuries—they are fardu kifayah. "If we want to feed the ummah and protect the land," he often shares in training workshops, "we must learn from others, teach what we know, and trade with integrity. Globalisation, when guided by taqwa, becomes a form of dakwah." Thus, his farm is not only a site of cultivation, but a hub for peer learning, mentorship, and cross-border cooperation. His outreach extends to young agropreneurs, women farmers, and B40 communities—equipping them with the skills, tools, and spiritual frameworks needed to thrive in an interconnected world.
In this way, Qanaah Enterprise redefines what it means to be a modern Muslim agripreneur: one who combines fiqh of the land, technological excellence, global outreach, and faith-based stewardship. It reminds the world that the farmer's role is not merely to till the soil, but to contribute to the global ummah's wellbeing—spiritually, socially, economically, and ecologically. Through its model, Qanaah Enterprise offers a compelling case that the future of agriculture is not only smart and sustainable—but also deeply sejahtera, deeply ethical, and deeply Islamic.

Founder's Journey
Mr. Qanaah is the eldest of seven siblings. He was born into a humble family of traditional farmers in a rural village in Malaysia. His parents managed a small two-acre paddy field, which provided limited yield and was insufficient to fully support the needs of the growing family. To make ends meet, his parents also worked on a nearby rubber plantation, which they managed on a rental basis. Though life was simple, it was dignified. The family lived in a wooden house inherited from Mr. Qanaah's grandparents, and despite their modest means, they never had to rent a home.

Growing up, Mr. Qanaah attended a nearby primary school and later enrolled in the local secondary school—both within walking distance. Like his siblings, he also received Islamic education through *Kelas Asas Fardu Ain* (KAFA) and participated actively in Quranic learning. The family prioritized religious education, and during every long school break, their parents would send all the children to attend tahfiz summer programs. Over time, each of the seven siblings graduated as *al-hafiz* or *al-hafizah*, memorizing the Qur'an while balancing their secular studies.

Surrounded by lush paddy fields and fertile riverbanks where papaya and banana trees flourished, Mr. Qanaah's formative years were deeply intertwined with the rhythms of nature. He often helped his parents with farming activities, particularly during the planting and harvesting seasons. These early experiences nurtured in him a deep passion for agriculture and a respect for the land.

Unlike his siblings—who later pursued professional careers as an accountant, teacher, lawyer, doctor, engineer, and architect—Mr. Qanaah felt a strong calling toward farming. He actively attended agricultural briefings, community seminars, and short training courses organized by the Department of Agriculture. These exposures broadened his understanding of modern farming techniques and strengthened his resolve to pursue a career in agribusiness.

After completing his SPM (Malaysian Certificate of Education), Mr. Qanaah made the unconventional decision to enroll in the Agriculture Training Institute in Titi Gantung, Perak. His parents initially hoped he would pursue a conventional university degree like his siblings, but he convinced them of his genuine passion for agriculture and business. Understanding his commitment and seeing the long-term benefits of having him close to home, they gave their full support.
Mr. Qanaah's educational journey didn't stop there. He continued to learn from experienced practitioners and later received an invitation to join a research project led by a local university focusing on Artificial Intelligence (AI) in smart farming. This opportunity marked a turning point in his journey—from traditional farming to becoming a forward-thinking agripreneur who embraces technology while remaining rooted in Islamic values.

Business Model and Operations
As Qanaah Enterprise expanded, it remained deeply rooted in its founding values—anchored not only in faith-based ethics such as *taqwa* (God-consciousness) and *qanaah* (contentment), but also in an enduring commitment to broader frameworks of sustainability and good governance. These guiding principles were not merely aspirational ideals but were consciously and consistently embedded in the enterprise's daily operations, strategic decisions, and long-term vision.

In alignment with the Environmental, Social, and Governance (ESG) agenda, Qanaah Enterprise prioritizes environmental stewardship through clean farming techniques, minimal waste generation, and responsible resource management. Social responsibility is upheld through the creation of dignified job opportunities, empowerment of local communities, and the ethical treatment of workers. The principle of good governance is reflected in the company's culture of transparency, accountability, and integrity across all facets of its business activities.

The enterprise also actively supports the United Nations Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs). It contributes to poverty alleviation by fostering inclusive economic opportunities, especially for marginalized communities. It promotes health and well-being by ensuring access to clean, nutritious, and affordable food. Additionally, Qanaah Enterprise champions sustainable agriculture and climate action through eco-conscious practices that mitigate environmental degradation.

Beyond compliance, the enterprise adopts a model of ethical and Islamic governance inspired by the values of *amanah* (trust), *shura* (consultation), and *siddiq* (truthfulness). These values serve as a moral compass, ensuring that leadership and decision-making processes are grounded in justice, responsibility, and ethical stewardship.

Rejecting the linear "take-make-dispose" industrial paradigm, Qanaah Enterprise embraces a circular economy model. It actively promotes the reuse, recycling, and repurposing of resources to reduce waste, reflecting the Islamic injunction against *israf* (wastefulness) and underscoring the importance of moderation, sustainability, and ecological balance.

Firmly rooted in Malaysia's MADANI framework, Qanaah Enterprise embodies six key values: KeMampanan (Sustainability), KesejAhteraan (Prosperity), Daya Cipta (Innovation), HormAt (Respect), KeyakiNan (Trust), and Ihsan (Compassion and Care). These principles guide the organization's ethical leadership, community engagement, and innovation strategy, ensuring that economic progress is balanced with social justice and environmental responsibility.

At its heart, Qanaah Enterprise contributes meaningfully to Sejahtera sustainability—a holistic and integrative concept of well-being with ten interrelated dimensions: spiritual, physico-psychological, intellectual, cognitive, cultural, ethical, emotional, ecological, economic, and societal. The enterprise fosters spiritual wellness through sincere *niyyah* (intentions) and continuous accountability to Allah. It enhances physical and environmental health through sustainable practices, while promoting social harmony through compassion, cooperation, and community-centered initiatives.

Despite these noble goals, the road was anything but smooth. One early test came when a middleman approached Mr. Qanaah, offering a lucrative deal to supply "organic" vegetables to a major city hotel chain. The offer was tempting—it promised to double his revenue overnight. But Mr. Qanaah discovered that the middleman intended to mix his premium vegetables with conventional produce from elsewhere while marketing it under Qanaah Enterprise's name. When Mr. Qanaah declined to participate in the deception, the middleman spread rumors that Qanaah's farm was "unhygienic" and "too small-scale for serious buyers." Some local retailers backed off, and online orders dipped.

Mr. Qanaah's response? *Sujud syukur* (prostration in gratitude). "This is not my rizq," he said calmly. "Allah has written for me something better."
Indeed, within a few months, a halal organic cooperative visited his farm during a university-organized field trip. Impressed by the technology, soil quality, and Mr. Qanaah's sincerity, they signed a direct supply contract that respected both integrity and price fairness. Allah opened a cleaner door after closing the corrupt one.

In other situation, as Qanaah Enterprise gained attention on social media for using AI-driven irrigation and drone-assisted monitoring, a venture capital firm offered a large investment to scale the farm into a commercial agro-tech park. But hidden in the contract clauses were demands for increased output, including the use of faster synthetic fertilizers and monoculture crops—contrary to Qanaah's principles of slow, ethical growth and biodiversity.

Mr. Qanaah called for *istikharah* (prayer for divine guidance) and consulted his *murabbi* (spiritual teacher). Though the financial offer was enticing, he declined.
"I am not hungry for scale if it means I must lose my soul. Even if I grow slowly, I want to be held accountable in the Hereafter with serenity, not regret."
Instead, he continued to grow organically through crowdfunding with his loyal customers—many of whom were grateful parents buying pesticide-free greens for their children and senior citizens seeking nutritious halalan toyyiban food.

But not all stories were dark. Among the brightest came from a young man named Izzat—once a school dropout due to poverty and depression. Mr. Qanaah took him in as a trainee after a local imam recommended him. He not only trained Izzat in smart farming but also included him in Qur'an memorization circles after work. Eventually, Izzat came to manage one of Qanaah Enterprise's satellite farms and is now a respected community trainer, often reminding others that farming, when done with *ikhlas* (sincerity) and *tawakkul* (trust in Allah), is a form of *ibadah* (worship).

Another remarkable story is that of Kak Siti, a single mother of three who used to sell homemade snacks by the roadside. After attending a food preservation workshop organized by Qanaah Enterprise in collaboration with a nearby vocational college, she was offered a micro-franchise opportunity to supply organic chili paste and herbal tea from the enterprise's produce. Today, she manages her own kitchen stall and mentors other women in the asnaf and B40 category, empowering them through both income and dignity.

There are Hafiz and Roslan, two former inmates who joined Qanaah's reintegration program supported by the local mosque committee. Instead of returning to their past lives, they now oversee composting and aquaponics systems—recycling food and fish waste into usable nutrients. The duo have since launched a small cooperative producing eco-fertilizers, and have been invited to speak at youth-at-risk forums to inspire change through purposeful enterprise.

In another initiative, Qanaah Enterprise partnered with a group of differently-abled youth from a nearby learning center. They were trained in seedling care and hydroponic systems, offering them not only employment but also the self-worth that comes from being contributors to society. Their produce—grown with meticulous care—is now labeled "Specially Nurtured" and sold at the local weekend market, receiving overwhelming support from the community.

Even elderly villagers are not left out. Pak Din, a retired school gardener, was hired part-time to oversee traditional herbal plots. His deep knowledge of local plants is now documented and used in workshops for young entrepreneurs interested in halal herbal products, reviving indigenous knowledge and intergenerational collaboration.

Products and Purpose

Qanaah Enterprise's products—MD2 pineapples, leafy greens, fresh chillies, and seasonal vegetables—are sold directly to health-conscious consumers, niche halal organic retailers, and at pasar tani (farmer's markets). Instead of chasing export contracts, the enterprise prioritizes local food security, ensuring that B40 families and low-income households in the area can afford nutritious, chemical-free food. Any surplus harvest is donated every Friday to mosques and orphanages—further sealing Qanaah Enterprise's mission of *barakah* (divine blessings), not mere profit. Table 1 shows the total revenue (in RM) and the description of *barakah*.

Table 1: Total Revenue (in RM) and *Barakah*

Year	Total Revenue (RM)	Description of *barakah*
2020	RM36,000	Small-scale MD2 pineapple harvests, home garden leafy greens. Limited consumer reach. COVID-19 MCO slows sales, but some demand from local families remains.
2021	RM108,000	Began selling at *pasar tani*, expanded to chillies and leafy vegetables. Partnered with local imam and mosque to increase visibility. Friday surplus donations institutionalized.
2022	RM156,000	Satellite plot added, allowing for more seasonal vegetables. Collaborated with niche halal organic grocers. Steady sales to B40-friendly markets. Training of youth (e.g., Izzat) boosts productivity.
2023	RM216,000	University commendation improved trust. High demand for MD2 pineapples and eco-farming produce. Women's chili paste enterprise brings in consistent collaborative revenue.
2024	RM300,000	Weekly markets, mosque collaborations, and "Specially Nurtured" label enhance brand. Differently-abled team contributes to seedling output. More partnerships with B40 vendors. Still donates surplus weekly.

Table 1 shows the total annual revenue of Qanaah Enterprise from 2020 to 2024 reflects not only its financial performance but also the unfolding of *barakah* (divine blessings) that accompany its spiritually anchored operations. Unlike conventional businesses driven by profit maximization, Qanaah Enterprise embraces a barakah economy model—one that prioritizes purpose, sincerity (ikhlas), and service to the community. Each year's growth tells a story of not just economic resilience, but also ethical, social, and spiritual flourishing.

In 2020, amidst the nationwide COVID-19 Movement Control Order (MCO), Qanaah Enterprise recorded a modest revenue of RM36,000. The enterprise was still operating on a small scale, producing MD2 pineapples and leafy greens from home gardens. Consumer reach was limited, yet local families continued to rely on its affordable, chemical-free produce. The *barakah* in this period lay in the ability to sustain operations during a national crisis—meeting essential community needs with sincerity and resilience.

By 2021, revenue tripled to RM108,000. This year marked a significant turning point, as Qanaah Enterprise expanded its product line to include chillies and additional vegetables, began participating in *pasar tan*i (farmer's markets), and formed meaningful collaborations with the local imam and mosque. Weekly *sadaqah* (charitable surplus donations) on Fridays became a consistent practice. The *barakah* here manifested in enhanced community trust and visibility—achieved not through aggressive marketing, but through genuine relationships and continuous giving.

In 2022, revenue grew to RM156,000, driven by the addition of a satellite farm that enabled a broader range of seasonal produce. Collaborations with halal organic grocers helped expand market reach, while youth empowerment programs—such as mentoring individuals like Mr. Izzat—boosted productivity and created meaningful employment. The *barakah* of this year was evident in the steady, values-aligned growth that brought benefit to both the enterprise and the community. The business became a platform for taqwa-centered development, circulating goodness within the ummah.

The upward momentum continued in 2023, with revenue reaching RM216,000. A local university recognized Qanaah Enterprise for its ESG-aligned practices and contribution to community empowerment. Demand for MD2 pineapples and eco-farming produce increased, while a new collaborative effort with a women-led chili paste micro-enterprise introduced another stream of shared income. Here, the barakah revealed itself in the form of *izzah* (dignity) and *rezeki* (sustenance) for single mothers and other marginalized members of the community—proof that sincere effort is often followed by honor and trust.

By 2024, Qanaah Enterprise had grown into a vibrant ecosystem of inclusion and empowerment, achieving RM300,000 in annual revenue. Its presence at weekly markets, continued partnerships with mosques, and branding initiatives like "Specially Nurtured" products cultivated by differently-abled youth earned widespread community support. Collaborations with B40 vendors deepened, and Friday donations remained a constant practice. The *barakah* this year was expansive: the enterprise became a rahmah-infused space—a womb of compassion—where the marginalized were given voice, value, and purpose. Growth was no longer just numerical but deeply spiritual, driven by niyyah (pure intentions), ta'awun (mutual support), and ikhlas.

Indeed, the financial trajectory of Qanaah Enterprise is more than a revenue report—it is a testament to the spiritual truth that when business is conducted with trust, compassion, and consciousness of Allah, *barakah* follows. Year by year, the enterprise grows not only in numbers, but in sincerity, service, and impact. Every ringgit earned is a reflection of divine provision, carried with spiritual weight and multiplied through ethical action.

Strategic Challenges

It was a breezy Thursday afternoon when three sharply dressed investors in leather shoes stepped into the modest, sun-kissed fields of Qanaah Enterprise. They were impressed—but their eyes quickly darted to the "untapped potential."

Investor 1: "Brother Qanaah, your farm has serious potential. With the right strategy, you could supply multiple supermarket chains in the Klang Valley." They spread out blueprints and a digital presentation on a tablet.

Investor 2: "Imagine this. Triple your yield by eliminating intercropping. Use fast-release fertilizer, streamline harvesting with outsourced labor. We'll take care of the logistics. You just grow."

Mr. Qanaah listened quietly, his fingers brushing the edge of a spinach leaf nearby.

Mr. Qanaah [Smiling gently]: “Yes, I could do all that. But tell me, who will answer to Allah when the soil turns dry, the nutrients fade, and the *barakah* disappears?”

Investor 3: [Laughs] “Business is business, brother. People don’t care how it's grown. As long as it looks fresh and makes profit.”

Mr. Qanaah: [Voice firm but calm] “Maybe they don’t care. But I do. And more importantly, Allah knows. My *niyyah* is not volume—it is *sejahtera*. Not profits, but purpose. Not empire, but enough.”

The meeting ended respectfully, but without a deal. One investor was overheard muttering, “Another romantic farmer,” as they left.

At a sharing session at a Department of Agriculture forum:
“Sometimes they call me naïve. But I’m not planting for shelves—I’m planting for my soul. Qanaah teaches me to be content, not complacent. If Allah wants me to grow, He’ll open ways that don’t compromise my values.”

Mr Qanaah is firmed with “No Riba, No Regret” attitude. During the early days, cash flow was tight. Equipment needed repair, and seeds had to be bought in bulk. His elderly neighbor, Pak Sulaiman, dropped by one evening with a concerned look.

Pak Sulaiman: “Just take the AgroBank loan, la. Fast process. Everyone borrows.”

Mr. Qanaah: [Pouring tea] “Even if the whole world borrows, I cannot. I won’t build this farm on *riba*. I’d rather grow slowly with peace than fast with guilt.”

Instead, he launched a small crowdfunding initiative—inviting the local community to support a vegetable box subscription. Fifty families signed up, prepaying for 3 months of fresh organic produce. He recorded a humble voice note and shared it in the WhatsApp group.

Mr. Qanaah (in his voice note): “Bismillah. Assalamualaikum. I invite you to support Qanaah Farm. Pay today, eat fresh halalan toyyiban vegetables for the next three months. Let’s grow this barakah together.”

All 50 slots filled in just four days. Word spread fast—his vegetables became known as sayur yang ada doa (vegetables with prayer).

Mr Qanaah shared his reflection during an entrepreneurship workshop:
“I always tell young farmers: We seek modal, but never at the cost of moral. Even if I must dig with my own hands, I won’t touch *riba*. My covenant is with Allah—and He never breaks His promises.”

Mr Qanaah subscribed “Modern Technology, Rural Wisdom.” One morning, the solar-powered AI dashboard that controlled his irrigation system stopped working. The usual technician, Ahmad, was away in Johor.

Izzat (his young assistant): “Tuan, the dashboard’s down. Soil sensors are offline. The system won’t water the crops.”

Mr. Qanaah [Wiping sweat from his brow under the blazing sun]: “That’s why we can’t depend forever. We must learn to fix things ourselves.”

That evening, he sat with Zainab, an engineering intern from the local university. Together, they huddled over the manual and reconfigured the system—manually resetting nodes, rechecking solar inputs.

Zainab: “Uncle, you don’t have an engineering degree, but I’ve never seen this much sabr in a classroom.”

Mr. Qanaah: “Patience is better than panic. Allah gave us *aql* and *tawakkul*. Let’s use both.”

From then on, every Friday, he taught two village boys about sensors, water flow, and AI—a class he affectionately called “Smart Farming with *Sabr*.”
Mr Qanaah shared his reflection at a public youth forum:
“Technology is like a guest. If we don’t welcome it with learning, it won’t stay. Don’t just plant crops—plant skills. Teach your children to farm with their hands and program with their minds.”

At another situation, at the local *pasar tani*, a middle-aged mother with a toddler on her hip paused at his stall.
Customer: “RM7 for spinach? I saw the same sayur at the supermarket for RM3.”
Mr. Qanaah [With warmth]: “That one grows fast—with chemicals and sprays. Mine? Grown with compost, Qur’an recitation, and mercy. No shortcuts, no poison.”
Customer: “But I’ve got five mouths to feed…”
Mr. Qanaah: [Handing her a bag] “Then take this half-price. I just ask for one thing—make *doa* for farmers like me.”
The woman returned every week. She later shared photos of his vegetables in her surau *WhatsApp* group, describing them as “vegetables with *rahmah*.” Eventually, she brought her teenage son to volunteer at the farm during school breaks.

Mr Qanaah shared his reflection at a Department of Agriculture customer awareness campaign:
“Selling organic is not just about profit—it’s about rahmah for the land, and amanah to the people. I tell my customers: This isn’t just food. It’s a du’a you’re eating.”

Strategic Opportunities

Mr. Qanaah’s journey with Qanaah Enterprise reveals numerous strategic opportunities that can inspire other small-scale farmers and agripreneurs. One of the most impactful was his collaboration with local universities to address technical farming challenges. What began as a plea for help during a difficult rainy season evolved into a structured Field-to-Lab Training Program, where final-year students analyzed real-time data from the farm and returned with actionable solutions. These interactions turned Qanaah Farm into a dynamic learning ground. As Mr. Qanaah reflected, it was a true example of ta’awun—knowledge shared with sincerity. The lesson here is that strategic academic partnerships can turn farms into living laboratories, creating a sustainable cycle of practical innovation and mutual benefit.

Another critical opportunity that Mr. Qanaah leveraged was the use of digital marketing to build a meaningful brand around halalan toyyiban produce. Inspired by a TikTok video, he created his own simple farm video, showcasing spinach grown with compost, rainwater, and doa. His sincerity resonated widely, drawing thousands of views and customer engagement. With his daughter's help, he extended his presence to Instagram and Shopee, branding his produce under the tagline "From soil to soul." His success illustrates that digital platforms are not just tools for commerce but are avenues for spiritual storytelling and authentic engagement. For other farmers, this example underscores the power of intention-driven branding in an age where trust and transparency define value.

Equally significant was Mr. Qanaah's decision to reject riba-based loans in favor of Islamic social finance instruments such as waqf and qard hasan. When funds were needed for a greenhouse, he approached his local masjid, requesting a benevolent loan. In an act of communal grace, the mosque committee instead launched a waqf campaign, allowing the greenhouse to become a source of sadaqah jariyah for donors. This experience affirmed Mr. Qanaah's belief that finance infused with rahmah (mercy) nurtures more than capital—it builds trust and shared responsibility. For aspiring agripreneurs, this model offers a viable, values-driven alternative to exploitative credit systems, showing how ethical finance can be a tool for empowerment and social cohesion.

Lastly, Mr. Qanaah's commitment to khidmah (service) led him to offer knowledge-sharing workshops for B40 farmers. His initiative, "Hari Ilmu Tani Qanaah," became a platform for practical training in pesticide-free farming, composting, and faith-integrated agriculture. His message was clear: even pulling weeds becomes an act of worship with the right niyyah. These sessions not only equipped participants with technical skills but also restored their confidence and spiritual motivation. The workshops, grounded in humility and sincerity, exemplify how knowledge becomes a gift when shared. Other farmers and NGOs can replicate this by hosting grassroots-level training sessions that are simple, spiritual, and socially inclusive—transforming farming into a collective path of sustenance and *barakah*.

Five Years Later – Qanaah Enterprise and the Future of Faith-Driven Agriculture

Five years have passed since the story of Qanaah Enterprise first began inspiring classrooms, communities, and changemakers. What started as a humble farm growing MD2 pineapples has now blossomed into a beacon of ethical agriculture—not in size or scale, but in substance, sincerity, and soul.

Qanaah Enterprise would remain unwavering in its commitment to *taqwa*-rooted, *qanaah*-centered farming. It has neither morphed into a mega-corporation nor succumbed to pressures to commercialize at the cost of values. Instead, it has become an anchor of ecosystemic barakah in Malaysia's food landscape—serving not only B40 families and the elderly but also students, young agripreneurs, and researchers across ASEAN and OIC countries.

The Qanaah Farm is not just a farm—it is an *Ummatic* Learning Sanctuary. Its *Friday Smart Farming with Sabr* classes have evolved into a nationally recognized agro-ethics youth program certified by a consortium of Islamic universities. Izzat now oversees two regenerative farming sites and mentors dozens of new trainees. Kak Siti has grown her chili paste brand into a cooperative with over 40 B40 women, producing certified *halalan toyyiban* products sold in ethical retail outlets and surau-based community markets. Hafiz and Roslan's eco-fertilizer cooperative now supplies schools and pesantren with natural inputs, while the "Specially Nurtured" produce line led by differently-abled youth is exported to Brunei and Indonesia—not for profit, but as dakwah through food.

Technologically, the farm remains modest yet adaptive. With student interns and microgrants, the irrigation system now integrates blockchain traceability for transparency and amanah. All harvests are tracked from seed to soul—proof that Islamic ethics and smart farming can coexist. The AI dashboard remains solar-powered, but every Friday, Mr. Qanaah still walks the fields to make du'a at each compost pile.

Financially, Qanaah's sustainability model continues to reject *riba*, preferring community-backed *qard hasan*, *waqf* greenhouses, and crowdfunding circles. The farm's social finance logbook—handwritten and digitized—has become a reference for other faith-based agripreneurs exploring alternatives to exploitative capital.

Socially, Qanaah Enterprise has emerged as a rural hub of *khidmah* (service). Its *Hari Ilmu Tani Qanaah* event now runs quarterly, attended by young farmers, mothers, retirees, and university scholars alike. Each session opens with Surah Al-Baqarah: 261 and closes with *doa selamat* for the earth and those who till it. And while the revenue has grown steadily, Mr. Qanaah still refuses supermarket contracts that compromise the sejahtera of his soil and workers.

Spiritually, the farm has become a living mimbar. Its motto—"From Soil to Soul"—is etched on a wooden sign at the gate, beneath which every visitor reads:
"This farm is not for profit, but for the pleasure of Allah. Every drop of rain, every prayer, and every harvest is for His sake."

At age 60, Mr. Qanaah still leads the morning *tahajjud* prayer under the jackfruit tree, opens the weekly farm market with *Bismillah*, and ends each day with *shukr*. When asked at a global halal food summit what his future plan was, he smiled and replied,
"To keep planting *taqwa* into the soil and leave footprints of *barakah* for others to follow."

Thus, five years later, Qanaah Enterprise is not just a case study. It is a legacy—a prophetic echo of *khilafah*, rahmah, and amanah on earth. It calls the world not merely to farm differently—but to live, lead, and grow with meaning, moderation, and mercy. And in doing so, it reminds us: "Even the smallest farm, with the right niyyah, can feed the ummah and fulfill fardu kifayah."

Discussion Questions

1. How does Qanaah Enterprise exemplify the integration of Islamic values such as *qanaah*, *taqwa*, *amanah*, and *halalan toyyiban* in its business model, and how do these values influence decision-making in the face of financial temptations or market pressures?

2. In what ways does Qanaah Enterprise demonstrate *Sejahtera* sustainability and the principles of the *barakah* economy, and how can this model be applied by other small-scale enterprises in Malaysia and beyond?
3. How does the founder's refusal to scale at the cost of values, and his adoption of AI and circular economy practices, reflect a balance between modern technology and rural Islamic wisdom?
4. What strategic opportunities did Qanaah Enterprise unlock through collaborations with universities, mosques, and the local community—and how can these relationships be strengthened to scale impact rather than just output?
5. How can young agripreneurs and business students draw lessons from Qanaah Enterprise's narrative to craft their own models of ethical entrepreneurship—especially in sectors prone to exploitation, greenwashing, or burnout?

IIUM Journal of Case Studies in Management: Vol. 16, No. 2, August 2025, pp.108-118
ISSN: 2810-2327 e-ISSN: 2710-7175
Received: 9 June 2025 Reviewed: 10 June 2025 Revised: 14 July 2025 Accepted: 17 July 2025

HeeJau Urban Farmer Enterprise: Scaling Livelihoods and Faith-Based Empowerment through Urban Farming in a Malaysian PPR Flat

Suhaimi Mhd Sarif
Kulliyyah of Economics and Management Sciences
International Islamic University Malaysia
Email: albanjari@yahoo.com

Dzuljastri Abdul Razak
International Institute for Halal Research and Training (INHART)
International Islamic University Malaysia
Email:dzuljastri@iium.edu.my

Dolhadi Zainudin
Kulliyyah of Economics and Management Sciences
International Islamic University Malaysia
Email: dolhadi@iium.edu.my

Rohaziah Yahya*
SRI Khaldun Sdn Bhd
Email: rohaziah_yahay@hotmail.com
**Corresponding author*

Abstract
This case study explores the lived experience of Puan Hajar, a 42-year-old mother of seven residing in a low-cost high-rise flat (PPR) in Sentul, Kuala Lumpur, and her journey in building HeeJau Urban Farmer Enterprise—a faith-driven micro-business integrating urban farming, tailoring, and digital entrepreneurship. Raised in an orphanage and trained under the KEMAS TVET program in women's garment tailoring, Puan Hajar overcame spatial, economic, and emotional limitations to transform a 5-square-meter balcony and a modest living room into a productive and spiritually anchored livelihood ecosystem. This case examines how Islamic values such as *niyyah* (intention), *amanah* (trust), *mas'uliyyah* (accountability), *ihsan* (excellence), and *ta'awun* (mutual aid) inform her operations, turning her household into a model of Sejahtera-oriented sustainability. HeeJau's evolution from subsistence farming to ethical agropreneurship demonstrates how low-income urban residents—especially women—can generate micro-income, food security, and social cohesion through skills, discipline, and divine consciousness. The enterprise also utilizes digital platforms (TikTok, Shopee) to expand market reach and share knowledge, becoming a source of community da'wah and empowerment. By applying lean management (5S) and Islamic ethical frameworks, Puan Hajar bridges technical productivity with spiritual excellence. Pedagogically, this case offers a valuable model for Technical and Vocational Education and Training (TVET), Islamic business ethics, Sejahtera campus initiatives, and digital da'wah literacy. It affirms that economic transformation and spiritual elevation are not mutually exclusive. Even under structural poverty, meaningful livelihood can flourish through the cultivation of faith, resilience, and a sense of collective purpose.

Keywords: Urban Farming, Tawhidic Agropreneurship, Microenterprise Empowerment, Sejahtera Urban Sustainability

Introduction

Urban poverty and food insecurity remain pressing challenges in many emerging market cities. In Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia's rapidly urbanizing capital, low-income residents—particularly those living in high-rise, low-cost housing schemes—often face complex and multidimensional vulnerabilities. This case study highlights the entrepreneurial resilience of Puan Hajar, a 42-year-old mother of seven who resides on the 13th floor of a three-bedroom flat in a People's Housing Project (PPR) in Sentul.

Puan Hajar was raised in an orphanage and never knew her biological parents. The only family she has ever known are the caretakers who nurtured her through childhood. Like other children in institutional care, she was sent to complete her primary and secondary education, eventually graduating with the Sijil Pelajaran Malaysia (SPM). Upon completing school, she left the orphanage to pursue technical training at the KEMAS Skill Academy in Seri Iskandar, Perak. Over the span of two years, she completed three levels of the Sijil Kemahiran Malaysia (SKM) in women's garment tailoring: Level 1 (6 months), Level 2 (6 months), and Level 3 (12 months). There are 5 levels of Malaysian Skills Certificate (Sijil Kemahiran Malaysia/SKM) for Sijil Pelajaran Malaysia (SPM) leavers. Table 1 shows the five levels of SKM.

Table 1: 5 Levels of Malaysian Skills Certificate (SKM) for SPM Leavers

Level 1	SKM Level 1 (Operations and Production Level)
Level 2	SKM Level 2 (Operations and Production Level)
Level 3	SKM Level 3 (Supervisory Level)
Level 4	Diploma in Malaysian Skills (DKM) Level 4 (Advanced Supervisory Level)
Level 5	Advanced Diploma in Malaysian Skills (DLKM) Level 5 (Management Level)

Source: Ministry of Human Resources, Malaysia &
Skills Development Fund Corporation (PTPK)

After receiving her SKM Level 3 certification, Puan Hajar returned to Sentul and rented a room from her former orphanage caretaker. She began working as a sewing assistant in a small tailor shop. In time, her caretaker proposed that she marry her son, a long-haul lorry driver whose routes spanned Pasir Gudang, Port Klang, and various locations in Perak, Penang, Kedah, and Perlis. Lacking an extended family or support system, and longing for emotional stability, she agreed. Their marriage has been blessed with seven children. However, due to the demanding and irregular nature of her husband's work—returning home only twice a month—the responsibility of caregiving, household management, and income generation rests almost entirely on her shoulders.

Drawing upon her vocational training in sewing and her self-taught knowledge of urban agriculture, Puan Hajar established HeeJau Urban Farmer Enterprise. Operating from a narrow balcony of less than five square meters, she gradually transformed her home into a hybrid space of productivity, combining micro-scale farming with online sales and home-based tailoring. Her initiative has since evolved into a faith-driven model of micro-agripreneurship that integrates resourcefulness, sustainability, and spiritual purpose. This case offers a compelling perspective on how urban farming—when guided by skills, adaptability, and ethical values—can function as an inclusive and accessible strategy for survival and empowerment, even amid severe spatial and economic constraints.

Phase 1: From Subsistence to Micro-Enterprise

The genesis of HeeJau Urban Farmer Enterprise can be traced to late 2022, when Puan Hajar began cultivating cili kampung, kesum, daun sup, and pegaga in reused plastic containers and paint buckets on the narrow balcony of her 13th-floor PPR flat. With seven children and a three-bedroom apartment already stretched to its limits, she had no dedicated space for farming or sewing. Nevertheless, through strategic placement of vertical racks and reflective panels, she maximized the limited sunlight reaching her balcony, successfully creating a small but productive micro-garden.

Crucially, she had to ensure that her farming activities adhered strictly to flat management regulations, which prohibit water stagnation or improper waste disposal due to the high risk of Aedes mosquito breeding. The building's management, in coordination with the Kuala Lumpur City Hall (DBKL), conducts routine and spot inspections, with penalties imposed for non-compliance—and serious violations potentially resulting in eviction. Additionally, as her balcony faces a major road and highway, she maintained the aesthetic appearance and cleanliness of her setup to avoid complaints or negative public perception. She applied the same discipline to her home-based sewing activities, making sure noise, clutter, or machine operation did not disturb nearby residents.

Fortunately, her neighbors—comprising mostly working adults and students—were not only supportive but also inspired by her initiative. What began as a solitary effort soon became a shared learning space. Puan Hajar voluntarily opened her unit on weekends to conduct small-scale sessions on urban farming techniques. She provided guidance to fellow residents on soil preparation, composting, vertical gardening, and plant care, free of charge. She believed that empowering others would not reduce her own competitiveness but would instead build a stronger, mutually supportive community. Over time, her peers began applying similar techniques to their own balconies, creating a ripple effect of productivity and cooperation throughout the block.

Selling small batches of herbs and leafy vegetables to neighbors and local food vendors, she began earning approximately RM200–RM300 per month. These earnings, while modest, played a meaningful role in reducing her family's grocery bills and covering incidental expenses such as school supplies for her children. Beyond the financial benefit, the project fostered a growing sense of food security and personal empowerment. In a time of rising vegetable prices and economic uncertainty, her ability to feed her family with fresh, organic produce cultivated from her own balcony instilled both pride and purpose.

This initial phase of HeeJau laid the foundation not only for technical skill-building in urban agriculture but also for critical entrepreneurial habits—including daily crop maintenance, basic customer relationship management, and informal inventory tracking—all cultivated within the spatial and logistical limitations of a low-income high-rise environment.

Diversifying with Sewing and Digital Outreach

Alongside her efforts in urban farming, Puan Hajar revitalized her tailoring skills as an additional source of income. Having completed the Sijil Kemahiran Malaysia (SKM) Level 3 in women's garment tailoring through a structured KEMAS Technical and Vocational Education and Training (TVET) program, she further enhanced her competencies through a specialized post-certification enhancement module focused on home-based tailoring and small-scale entrepreneurship. As part of a government-backed micro-skills support initiative, she received a basic sewing machine set, including essential tools and starter materials, enabling her to establish a home-based tailoring operation.

She began by offering simple alteration services—hemming school uniforms, repairing garments, and adjusting clothing for children in her block. As word of her skills spread, she expanded into custom tailoring of traditional baju kurung, baju melayu, and casual wear, particularly during seasonal peaks such as school reopening periods, Hari Raya Aidilfitri, and wedding seasons. Her ability to deliver quality workmanship at affordable prices made her a popular choice among working parents and students within her PPR community. This micro-enterprise required little additional capital and was highly compatible with her lifestyle: she could sew in between household chores, during children's nap times, or in the evenings after dinner.

This dual-income strategy—urban farming on the balcony and home tailoring in the living room—allowed Puan Hajar to diversify her earnings while maintaining her role as a full-time caregiver. The two activities complemented each other: farming provided a physical, outdoor outlet and connected her with neighbours, while tailoring allowed her to remain indoors, focused, and economically productive without incurring transportation costs or sacrificing time with her children.

By mid-2023, her eldest daughter, a diploma student in Information Technology, recognized the potential to expand their reach through digital means. With her technical expertise and creative input, they conceptualized a digital brand identity: HeeJau, a portmanteau of "Hijau" (green) and "Hajar", symbolizing both the sustainability ethos of the enterprise and the personal narrative behind its creation. Together, they began producing and sharing short-form video content on platforms like TikTok and Instagram. These videos included plant care tutorials, seed-starting techniques, harvest updates, time-lapse clips of ulam growing in containers, as well as beginner-friendly sewing tutorials for simple blouses and children's wear.

The authenticity of Puan Hajar's content—often filmed in natural lighting on her balcony or in her modest living space—resonated with viewers. Her practical advice, combined with relatable storytelling as a working mother, quickly attracted a modest but engaged online following. While initial views were humble, comments and private messages from other urban dwellers, especially women seeking to start home-based ventures, steadily increased. Over time, the HeeJau brand evolved into more than just a product-based business—it became a micro-influencer platform and a source of inspiration for women navigating the dual pressures of domestic life and economic survival in low-income urban settings.

Model Expansion: Agropreneurship with Ethical Branding

Although rooftop access was not an option due to safety restrictions and building policies, HeeJau did not stall. Instead, it pivoted with remarkable creativity and momentum into Model 3: Agropreneurship with Online Sales and Branding—a bold transformation from selfsufficiency to structured microenterprise. This leap was neither accidental nor instant; it was fueled by Puan Hajar's insatiable entrepreneurial curiosity, deep community insight, and unwavering commitment to deliver value grounded in sincerity and service.

As her urban farm began to yield more than her family needed, and as her neighbours grew increasingly interested in not just buying produce but also learning how to grow their own, Puan Hajar saw the opportunity to diversify and elevate her offerings. She began introducing value-added products tailored for the modern urban consumer seeking health, convenience, and authenticity:

- Herbal tea bundles: Thoughtfully hand-dried lemongrass, misai kucing, and pandan leaves—fragrant, natural, and free from chemicals.
- Mini ulam sets: Pre-packed, freshly harvested local herbs like pegaga, kesum, and daun selom—ready to be tossed into salads or sambal for nutritious home cooking.
- Seedlings in biodegradable pots: Encouraging first-time growers to start with simplicity, from basil to daun sup, paired with simple care instructions.
- DIY balcony farming kits: Designed especially for PPR residents, young urban couples, and students—complete with soil mix, seeds, recycled planters, and a step-by-step guide in both Bahasa Malaysia and English.

What truly set HeeJau apart was not the quantity or scale of these products, but their story. Every item sold bore the fingerprints of care, passion, and resilience—packaged not just with leaves and soil, but with meaning.

Driven by a hunger to grow not only her produce but her knowledge, Puan Hajar became a regular participant in training programs and community learning events offered by KEMAS, MARA, DBKL, the Ministry of Women, Family and Community Development, and a number of active local NGOs. She soaked up knowledge on herbal medicine, natural healing, community health, and microbusiness management. Although she lacked certification in therapies like bekam (cupping) or aromatherapy massage, her small but potent collection of organically grown herbs soon attracted attention from local wellness practitioners and herbal remedy sellers, who began sourcing ingredients from her modest balcony garden. She took pride in growing toyyiban herbs—pure, clean, and cultivated with barakah.

Her online expansion was equally driven by strategy and storytelling. Guided by her daughter's digital skills, she opened a Shopee page offering cash-on-delivery options and low-cost delivery within the Klang Valley, meeting the preferences of many cautious buyers in B40 households. But the real game-changer came from her use of TikTok—not just as a marketing tool, but as a window into her daily life.

Through short, authentic clips—sowing seeds in the early morning, frying herbs while her youngest child played nearby, packaging an order in between Maghrib and Isha'—Puan Hajar cultivated more than just crops. She cultivated trust. Her content was not polished or rehearsed; it was sincere, relatable, and deeply human. Audiences saw not only the products but the person behind them: a mother of seven, balancing entrepreneurship, childcare, sewing, and self-learning—all from a humble PPR flat in Sentul.

Revenue from HeeJau's agripreneurship phase grew steadily, often reaching RM1,500–RM2,400 per month during festive or high-demand periods. Yes, costs rose too—better packaging materials, delivery arrangements, and occasional platform fees—but HeeJau remained financially sustainable. Why? Because it was a family-run ecosystem: her children helped with packing, labelling, editing videos, even designing simple product flyers. Operational costs were minimal, profit margins stayed healthy, and customer retention was strong due to genuine engagement.

Most importantly, HeeJau turned its limitations into strengths. It proudly operated entirely from a 5-square-meter balcony and a modest living room. No shop lot, no warehouse, no staff. Just passion, intention (niyyah), and the belief that if done with care and faith, small efforts could generate big impacts. The business became a living testament to barakah: that blessings, once planted with sincerity and nurtured with effort, can multiply far beyond initial expectations.

For many urban dwellers trapped in low-income cycles, Puan Hajar's journey with HeeJau serves as a radiant reminder: even in the absence of space, capital, or formal business infrastructure, what matters most is the willingness to try, to learn, and to share. That's what makes HeeJau not just an agropreneurial venture, but a movement of empowerment, faith, and hope.

Operational and Household Sustainability

Despite operating in a confined three-bedroom PPR flat with seven growing children, Puan Hajar diligently implemented 5S lean management principles—a discipline she had first encountered during her sewing coursework under the KEMAS TVET program. While originally intended for tailoring workshops and production spaces, she adapted 5S to her home-based business ecosystem, seamlessly integrating it into both her tailoring corner and her balcony farming setup.

Sort (Seiri) became the cornerstone of her daily routine. Every item—be it fabric offcuts, herb seedlings, recycled planting containers, or packaging tools—was evaluated for necessity and use. Anything not required was recycled, repurposed, or donated. With limited space and a busy household, clutter was not an option.

Set in Order (Seiton) was not just for tools and materials—it also governed her time management. With school runs, meal preparation, online orders, and video content creation filling her day, Puan Hajar developed a meticulously organized schedule. Mornings were reserved for harvesting herbs and preparing deliveries, while afternoons were designated for sewing and editing short-form content with her daughter. Her tools were neatly labeled, her seeds arranged by type and germination cycle, and even her sewing patterns filed according to size and design. Everything had a place, and every minute had a purpose.

Shine (Seiso) became both a hygiene and spiritual priority. Her tailoring space—tucked into the living room—and her balcony garden were kept spotlessly clean, not just to pass the PPR's surprise inspections, but as a reflection of ihsan (excellence) and amanah (trust). She took pride in maintaining her small domain, believing that cleanliness was part of her ibadah. Her children were involved too—sweeping leaves, washing pots, and ensuring everything remained neat and safe from potential aedes mosquito breeding grounds.

Standardize (Seiketsu) came naturally to her as a mother and entrepreneur. She established simple, repeatable routines for everything: harvesting, packaging, sewing, budgeting, video recording, and even customer follow-up. She created a small "order logbook" to keep track of her sales, customers' preferences, and scheduled delivery runs. These systems—humble as they were—gave her predictability and consistency, reducing stress and minimizing mistakes.

Sustain (Shitsuke) was where her deepest tawakal manifested. Sustaining good practices in a constantly shifting, high-pressure environment is no small feat. Yet, Puan Hajar anchored her effort in discipline (mujahadah) and deep trust in Allah. She often reminded her children, "Kita usaha sungguh-sungguh, kemudian kita bertawakal. Kalau ada rezeki, tak ke mana. Tapi kalau kita malas, Allah pun tak suka." ("We give our best effort, and then we place our trust in Allah. If sustenance is meant for us, it will come. But if we are lazy, we lose Allah's pleasure.")

This tawhidic integration of effort and faith was evident in her frugal and strategic financial decisions. Her family operated on a tight, carefully managed monthly budget:

- PPR rental: RM250
- Utilities and mobile internet: RM180
- Household groceries: RM200–250 (further reduced through homegrown vegetables and herbs)
- Schooling and transport: RM300 (which included daily drop-offs and pickups)

Because she worked from home, no childcare costs were incurred, and she coordinated all her responsibilities around her children's schooling needs. Occasionally, her husband—though often away as a lorry driver—assisted with heavy deliveries and bulk compost lifting on his rare off-days. His income, while irregular, supplemented their essentials but was never relied upon as the core of the household budget.

Instead, HeeJau's strength lay in its diversified micro-income streams. Through a blend of urban farming and tailoring, Puan Hajar created a resilient dual-business model. This enabled not only survival but modest progress: she could set aside small savings for school expenses, upgrade her gardening tools (such as purchasing better quality soil or organic compost), and eventually invest in basic digital tools—a tripod, ring light, and a second-hand smartphone for content creation.

For Puan Hajar, every sen spent was weighed with hikmah (wisdom) and shukr (gratitude). Every order completed, every seed harvested, every baju kurung sewn, was a part of her service to her family, her community, and ultimately to her Creator.

Ethical Framework: Tawhidic and Sejahtera Integration

At its very core, HeeJau Urban Farmer Enterprise is not merely a home-based micro-business—it is a manifestation of tawhid: a living reflection of servitude to Allah through daily acts of responsibility, resilience, and resourcefulness. The enterprise is firmly anchored in Islamic ethics, not merely in name or branding, but in its niyyah (intention), amal (action), and akhlaq (character).

Although Puan Hajar did not have the blessing of growing up in a conventional family setting—having been raised in a disciplined orphanage in Kuala Lumpur—she was nurtured with the values of sabr (patience), adab (etiquette), and mas'uliyyah (accountability). Upon marrying the son of her former orphanage caretaker, she found not only a life partner, but a support system deeply rooted in dakwah and tarbiyyah. Her husband, despite his long hours on the road as a lorry driver, consistently reminds her of their shared responsibility to educate their children in Fardu 'Ayn—particularly in Qur'an recitation, solat, adab, and taqwa.

“As parents, we cannot outsource the amanah of Islamic knowledge,” she emphasizes. *“Even if schools and madrasahs exist, we remain answerable before Allah.”*

Thus, every night, after completing her tailoring orders and tending to her balcony garden, Puan Hajar gathers her children in their modest living room to teach them Qur’an and foundational fiqh. Though lessons are often interrupted by household responsibilities or the needs of younger siblings, she finds these moments filled with barakah (divine blessing). Her own childhood, where love was sparse but structure was strict, shaped her commitment to creating a home defined by both rahmah (mercy) and ‘ilm (knowledge).

Within HeeJau, Islamic values are not supplementary—they are the core operational system that guides every decision and interaction.

Puan Hajar views herself as a custodian of the earth, not its owner. Every herb and vegetable she cultivates must be halalan toyyiban—free from harmful chemicals, nurtured with niyyah, care, and cleanliness. She meticulously sanitizes containers, repurposes food waste into compost, and ensures pest control through natural means. For her, this is not only a responsibility to the environment but a trust (amanah) from Allah and from the community that consumes her produce.

She instills in her children’s values of conservation and respect for rizq (sustenance). They are taught not to waste water, not to litter, and not to take Allah’s blessings for granted. This same principle governs her pricing policies—never inflating prices during festive seasons, and offering seedlings freely to struggling families. Waste management and fair trade, to her, are not optional but a moral extension of Divine accountability.

As for Puan Hajar, her neighbors are not mere customers, but companions in this worldly journey (dunya). She generously shares excess produce with elderly residents, teaches other mothers how to sew school uniforms, and offers compost to aspiring balcony gardeners. These acts, performed with no expectation of return, embody her belief that true profit lies in *silaturrahim* (bonding of hearts), not in ringgit and sen.

Whether packaging herbs or tailoring garments, she strives for excellence (itqan) and sincerity in every detail. She reuses ribbons, handwrites thank-you notes featuring Qur’anic reminders, and includes a fragrant pandan or lemongrass leaf in each delivery. Customers consistently remark not only on the quality of her work, but the genuine care and ihsan they feel in their interactions with her.

“Hijau yang berkat, usaha yang ibadah”
Her oft-repeated motto—*“Hijau yang berkat, usaha yang ibadah”* (Green that is blessed, effort that is worship)—is not a slogan, but a daily zikr (remembrance). It encapsulates her worldview that rejects materialistic exploitation, instead embracing Tawhidic stewardship of earth, time, and rizq.

When harvests are abundant, she does not hoard or discard. She channels the surplus as sadaqah jariyah (ongoing charity) to single mothers, elderly neighbors, or large families in need. She firmly believes that every stalk of kesum, every sprig of daun sup, belongs ultimately to Allah and should be shared accordingly.

When challenges arise—rising vegetable prices, delayed orders, or negative feedback—she does not despair. She reminds herself and her children with tawakal (trust in Allah), often reciting: *"Hasbunallahu wa ni'mal wakeel"*
(Allah is sufficient for us, and He is the best disposer of affairs.)

Through these trials, she affirms that Allah never wastes the reward of those who strive with sincerity (muhsinin).

Conclusion and Pedagogical Implications
The story of HeeJau Urban Farmer Enterprise, rooted in the lived experiences of Puan Hajar, is more than an account of micro-entrepreneurship—it is a powerful testimony to how faith-driven resilience, ethical innovation, and community-oriented livelihood can thrive even under severe urban constraints. From her humble beginnings as an orphan to her current role as an agropreneur, educator, mother, and *da'iyah* in a 13th-floor flat in Kuala Lumpur, Puan Hajar demonstrates how *tawhidic* consciousness can infuse daily life with purpose, order, and barakah.

Her journey illustrates that meaningful economic participation need not be constrained by physical space, capital, or formal infrastructure. Instead, *niyyah* (intention), *amanah* (trust), *mas'uliyyah* (accountability), *ihsan* (excellence), and *ta'awun* (mutual support) form the foundational grammar of a livelihood model that is spiritually fulfilling and socially inclusive. Through balcony farming, tailoring, and digital outreach, Puan Hajar did not only uplift her household but empowered others around her, fostering a culture of self-reliance, collective learning, and divine accountability.

Her model of agropreneurship-with-*akhlaq* demonstrates how urban poverty and food insecurity can be addressed from the grassroots up—by integrating Sejahtera, Islamic work ethics, and sustainability practices in both production and distribution. This case invites rethinking of economic agency, especially among B40 urban households, not as passive recipients of aid but as moral agents of change.

Pedagogical Implications
The HeeJau case can serve as a model for TVET institutions, polytechnics, and community learning centers to design modules that integrate Tawhidic values into technical training. Curricula should go beyond hard skills to include ethical entrepreneurship, Islamic environmental ethics, and value-based branding. For example, modules on urban agriculture or tailoring can include lessons on *barakah*, *halalan toyyiban*, and *amanah* in product integrity.

In higher education, especially in courses related to Islamic economics, microfinance, and business ethics, this case offers a locally grounded, gender-inclusive, and spiritually anchored model of microenterprise. It provides a real-life application of concepts such as *Maqasid al-Shariah*, social responsibility, *ukhuwwah*, and *ihsan*. Students can be asked to develop business plans that balance profit, purpose, and piety inspired by this narrative.

The adaptation of 5S by Puan Hajar shows how industrial tools can be Islamized and embedded in personal development. Educational institutions can promote 5S not merely as a productivity tool but as a discipline of soul and space—connecting *Seiri* (Sort) to *tanzi*f (cleanliness), and *Shitsuke* (Sustain) to *mujahadah* (struggle against the nafs).

This case is a living embodiment of Islamic feminist resilience: a woman navigating gendered labor, childrearing, faith transmission, and income generation without compromising her values. It should be included in discussions on Muslimah leadership, home-based entrepreneurship, and community empowerment. Students can reflect on how *rahmah*, *hikmah*, and strategic patience are applied in gendered urban contexts.

The digital turn in HeeJau—from TikTok storytelling to Shopee micro-sales—shows how technology can be Islamized for da'wah, income, and social bonding. This provides a model for designing training programs on digital *dakwah* entrepreneurship, especially for the B40 youth and homemakers, combining social media literacy with Qur'anic ethics.

Universities aspiring to embody the Sejahtera philosophy can adopt HeeJau as a template for Living Labs or Sustainable Micro-Household Models. Practical modules on balcony permaculture, halal waste-to-compost, home finance with tawakal, and urban solidarity networks can be developed with this case as a blueprint.

Puan Hajar's nightly Qur'an lessons with her children amidst fatigue, noise, and constraints offer a profound example of parental *tarbiyyah* with *ikhlas*. Educators in parenting modules, *Usrah* facilitators, or *Fardhu Ayn* trainers can use this model to show that *tarbiyyah* is not limited by space or class—but enabled by *sabr, tawakal,* and *husn al-zann* (good expectations from Allah).

In sum, HeeJau Urban Farmer Enterprise is a pedagogical goldmine. It teaches us that the seeds of transformation are not found in wealth or degrees, but in *niyyah*, effort, and faith. With sincere action, even a 5-square-meter balcony can become a farm, a classroom, and a da'wah platform. May this story be told, studied, replicated, and expanded—so that the seeds of barakah continue to grow in every home, heart, and household.

Discussion Questions

1. How does Puan Hajar's integration of the Tawhidic paradigm—especially *niyyah, amanah,* and *mas'uliyyah*—reshape our understanding of entrepreneurship in urban poverty settings?
2. In what ways can urban farming and home tailoring be viewed not just as economic activities, but as acts of *ibadah* (worship) and *khidmah* (service) within the framework of Islamic ethics?
3. How does the adaptation of industrial concepts like 5S Lean Management reflect spiritual discipline and character formation in a low-income household context?
4. What role does digital literacy—through platforms like TikTok and Shopee—play in transforming microenterprise into a form of *dakwah* and economic empowerment for B40 women?
5. How can this case study inform the development of faith-driven TVET and entrepreneurship curricula that align with Sejahtera and Malaysia MADANI values in higher education institutions?

ISSN: 2810-2327 e-ISSN: 2710-7175
Received: 2 July 2025 Reviewed: 9 July 2025 Revised: 14 July 2025 Accepted: 17 July 2025

Al Dobowi Group: Business Growth in Local and International Markets

Jalal Rajeh Hanaysha
School of Business, Skyline University College, 1797, Sharjah, United Arab Emirates
E-mail: jalal.hanaysha@skylineuniversity.ac.ae; jalal.hanayshi@yahoo.com

Abstract
Al Dobowi Group was established in 1976 to serve customers in the UAE and other international markets by offering various products of high-quality at affordable prices. The Group runs its operations internationally in four continents (Middle East, Africa, Europe, and the Americas) and currently employs over 2000 staff, focusing on providing unique products and services to its customers in target markets. The main products offered include tyres, retreads, industrial and automotive batteries, industrial rubber products and fabrication, fluid management, autoparts, oil, filter, lubricants, storage and material handling, garage equipment, and industrial UPS and inverters. This case study aims to improve our understanding about the historical growth and development of Al Dobowi Group. It also enhances our understanding about the key tactics employed for managing its foreign operations. A significant focus is further put on the marketing mix strategies employed to achieve success in both domestic and international markets. Additionally, the corporate social responsibility and contributions of Al Dobowi Group to charitable organizations are outlined. Finally, this case study ends by highlighting the key challenges confronted by Al Dobowi Group in both domestic and international markets.

Keywords: Al Dobowi Group, global expansion, strategic marketing.

History and Background

Al Dobowi is an internationally esteemed producer of several products and services, including tyres, power storage, industrial rubber, material handling, and fluid management items. It was established in 1976 and currently maintains a significant presence in several countries. In 1975, Mr. Surender Singh Kandhari, the Chairman and Founder of the Al Dobowi Group conducted an exploratory visit to Dubai, leading to the establishment of the group with diverse business interests under his visionary leadership. His commitment to excellence and loyalty to honesty form the foundational principles of the Al Dobowi group. The organization functions as a unified business entity, committed to excellence in manufacturing and distribution. It functions by outsourcing the manufacturing of its tyres to prominent tyre facilities in Asia, employing its proprietary equipment and research and development. Currently, Al Dobowi is the leading battery manufacturer in the MENA region, providing both automotive and industrial solutions.

In addition to production and distribution, Al Dobowi Group offers effective solutions to technical challenges by utilizing its vast experience and an understanding of industry-specific challenges, encountered both internally and by the clients. Al Dobowi has established its brand a leader in the market by providing excellent services and unique solutions to its clients. The products and services are distributed worldwide through a strong business presence in Africa, the Americas, Asia, Europe, and the Middle East. The group has collaborations with renowned corporations such as Coca-Cola, Walmart, and DHL to deliver solutions that meet market requirements. Al Dobowi uses modern manufacturing plants, research and development centers, and strategic partnerships to keep its competitive edge in target markets.

In 2008, Al Dobowi Group established Ethiopia offices service centers and warehouses to serve Ethiopian, Djibouti and Somalia markets aimed at distributing tyres and batteries and OTR repair services in partnership with Rema Tip Top. Officials of the organization said that these initiatives will offer advantages and opportunities for Al Dobowi's European partners to start building their business in the world's fastest growing countries in the absence of that of local Africa. In the 1990s, the group expanded its operation to Africa and Asia, importing industrial and automotive components and accessories. In 2002, notable achievement of the group was the introduction of the Infinity tyre brand as well as establishment of tyre and battery manufacturing plants. Moreover, the group introduced IT technology in 2005 and initiated research and development, which support the innovation of the group.

In 2008, Al Dobowi has further expanded into South Africa through the acquisition of TyreCor, a domestic tyre distributor which has offices and service facilities in Cape Town, Johannesburg, Durban, and Mpumalanga. TyreCor is a preferred collaborator of Trelleborg in South Africa, and this acquisition is viewed as a significant milestone for strengthening Al Dobowi's affiliation with Trelleborg. In the meantime, Al Dobowi has formed a joint venture with Trelleborg to operate in the Middle East and select areas of Africa. Trelleborg Wheel Systems Middle East Ltd is partitioned at a ratio of 49:51 (Trelleborg: Al Dobowi). Representatives of the group acknowledged that Al Dobowi has designated several million dollars to improve the TyreCor infrastructure and "will augment this business by introducing the Infinity range of tyres and batteries, in addition to strengthening the group's agricultural tyre division."

The year of 2018 has also embarked on Al Dobowi Group success by expanding its business portfolio and designating it as the official distributor of the Taurus and Riken brands across Africa and the Middle East (Al Dobowi Group, 2018). Riken provides a comprehensive range of PCR and TBR tyres, whereas Taurus presents a varied assortment of PCR and LTR tyres. The Riken brand offers high-performance tyres across a wide range of products, supported by a rich heritage of quality and European manufacturing technology. Taurus is a reputable European brand that provides a legitimate opportunity to sell at competitive prices, based on a century of history and commercial involvement. It has been recognized as a dependable product that successfully attained desired performance in target markets. In 2024, Al Dobowi Group has maintained a successful presence in more than 45 countries around the world. It offers various products in different categories tyres, retreads, automotive batteries, industrial batteries, industrial rubber products & fabrication, storage & material handling, fluid management, oil, filter, & lubricants, garage equipment, autoparts, and industrial UPS & inverters, and has more than 2000 staff (Khaleej Time, 2021).

International Expansion

Al Dobowi Group has a remarkable history of international expansion, originating in the UAE but evolved to become a leader in the automotive and industrial markets. During its initial inception the group has mainly focused on the Middle East region but later realized the potential of global markets. In 1990s, Al Dobowi embarked on a global expansion journey, beginning with Middle East and some parts of Africa. This represented a significant milestone in the regional presence map and was supported by strategic distribution and robust relationship with local dealers. Accordingly, this was followed by the extension of products beyond tyres and offering automobile batteries, rubber industrial products, etc. In 2000s, Al

Dobowi has further reinforced its international growth by expanding into Europe, Asia, and the Americas. Through its strategic locations in Dubai, USA, Chile, and other countries, the organization has been able to effectively meet consumer needs via improved distribution and logistics network. Such international market presence was supported by the superior products and innovation of brands like Infinity and Eternity tyres, which have captured both the premium and value segments.

With two main manufacturing facilities in the UAE, Al Dobowi currently sells to more than 100 countries worldwide. It has established partnerships with other firms to distribute products in Spain, Germany, Chili, U.S., and South Africa (Gulf News, 2023). It has also established several contract manufacturing agreements with the largest tyre manufacturers in Asia, thus launching the production of high-quality products at affordable prices. This partnership helped Al Dobowi expand its production capacities and adapt to the growing demand in the emerging markets. Moreover, Al Dobowi emphasizes on learning about the precise needs of customers in target markets across various countries. Thus, it adapts its strategies and offerings to each region and adjusts pricing in accordance with the specific economic conditions and needs of consumers. The group's ability to adapt products and services to the specific needs of different markets was the most important factor in achieving success. Currently, Al Dobowi Group sells its offerings in more than 45 countries worldwide through an extensive network of intermediaries, while it adheres to the principles of sustainable development and high quality of services globally.

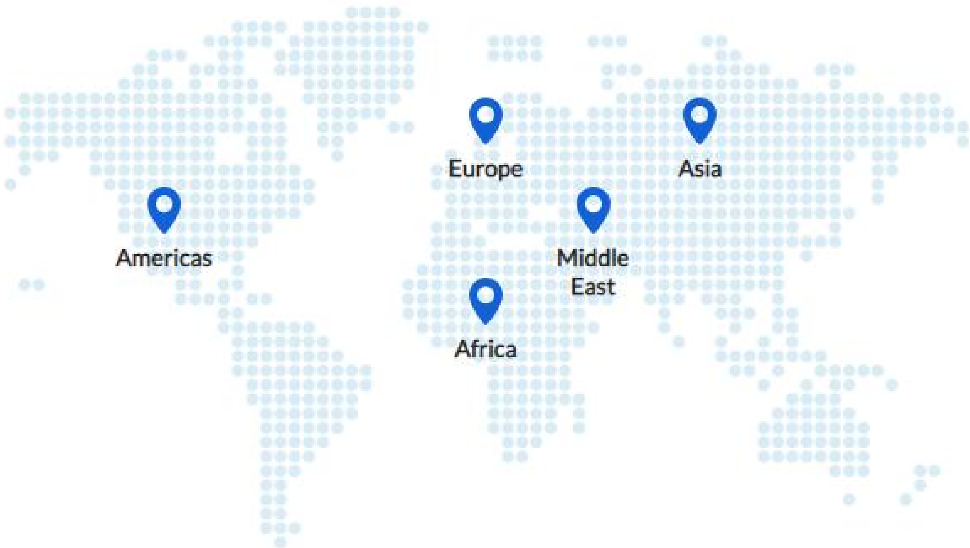


Figure 1: Global Presence of Al Dobowi Group

Marketing Strategies of Al Dobowi Group

An effective marketing strategy is the key foundation for a firm's success and long-term growth. Firms develop their marketing strategies by focusing on the marketing mix which includes various elements that a firm can blend to achieve a desired behavioural response from its target market (Wichmann et al., 2022). This concept is normally known as the Four P's: product, price, place, and promotion. These are the essential components of a marketing strategy, functioning as a means for executing an efficient marketing plan (Constantinides, 2002). Companies that effectively implement marketing strategies tailored to meet client wants and expectations tend to achieve competitive advantages and substantial market share.

The subsequent sub-sections present about the marketing mix strategies employed by Al Dobowi Group.

Product Strategy

Al Dobowi group focuses on several distinct product categories, each containing various products tailored to different market segments. The primary products include tyres, retreads, automotive batteries, industrial batteries, industrial rubber products & fabrication, storage & material handling, fluid management, oil, filter, & lubricants, garage equipment, autoparts, and industrial UPS & inverters (Khaleej Times, 2024). The company formulates its product strategy by designing products according to market needs and expectations, necessitating extensive research and development as well as competitive positioning. Besides the emphasis on creating a unique product design, the company believes that quality is important for maintaining its optimal position in target markets. This entails extensive discussion, market research, and surveys to determine the definitive product strategy for each product and market in order to ensure that customers get a high-quality product at affordable prices. Al Dobowi group also sources its materials from reputable suppliers who emphasize on maintaining quality standards. The list of suppliers can be seen in Figure 2.

Figure 2: Prime Associates/ Suppliers of Al Dobowi Group

Pricing strategy

Price refers to the amount of money paid by a customer to get a product or service (Kotler et al., 2021). The pricing strategy of Al Dobowi depends on two key factors: One its own cost of production and second is the market requirement. It competes in markets that are very conscious about the quality of the product and therefore the price at this level is slightly higher than the lower category of the market, but within this area there is a lot of competition too. Therefore, it basically defines with whom it competes, and based on that decides the best pricing strategy. In both cases, a value-based pricing strategy is used to position its products as premium offerings that deliver value through durability, safety, and performance. Prices will correspond to the superior quality and modern technology of the products. It sets the prices according to regional market dynamics, consumer purchasing power, and competitive landscape. In high income countries, it adopts a premium pricing for luxury goods to satisfy the needs of clients who seek for products with high quality and performance. However, in emerging markets, it uses a competitive pricing approach to gain larger market share and attract price-sensitive customers. The firm focuses on ensuring the attainment of adequate level of profitability and affordable prices for customers. This is especially the case for areas, which are characterized by high rivalry from both national and foreign brands. Moreover, Al Dobowi normally negotiates the prices with those who buy in large quantities (mainly the distributes and retailers). It also allows the buyers to enjoy price discounts and other attractive terms based on the number of purchases, payment terms, and long-term contracts.

Distribution Strategy

Distribution refers to how the products and services are made available to the customers in target markets (Kotler et al., 2021). In other words, it refers to the place where customers can get a firm's offerings. However, Al Dobowi Group uses different distribution strategies for different markets. In some regions, it takes the responsibility of distribution by itself, while in other markets, it relies on reliable distributors. The distribution strategy is characterized by strategic partnerships, a global presence, and emphasis on innovation and sustainability. Specifically, Al Dobowi has strong partnerships with major tyre and battery producers in the Middle East, Europe, and sub-Saharan Africa. It provides them with a diverse range of products and solutions to meet the needs of different markets. Furthermore, Al Dobowi has developed a worldwide distribution and sales network, enabling it to capture a high market share in target markets. Through its offices in Sharjah, Abu Dhabi, and Dubai, it has kept robust linkages with several groups of customers by demonstrating a commitment to quality and exceptional service.

Promotion/Marketing Strategy

Promotion refers to all marketing communication actions and programs designed by a firm to generate brand awareness and encourage people to buy its products and services (Belch & Belch, 2018). Al Dobowi has tailored its marketing strategies to suit different market segments through both traditional and digital media channels. Ean example of previous marketing campaigns was Infinity Tyres' 2012 themed "DNA," with an emphasis on the uniqueness of Infinity products, under the slogan, "Not all tyres are created equal" (Al Dobowi Group, 2012). The campaign featured advertisements of historic sites with Infinity tyres, underlining the uniqueness of the brand. The marketing components were consistent, with regular newsletters published in prestigious publications in the company's geographical locations, in addition to a quarterly newsletter that is available both in print and digitally at Infinity's online press room. Moreover, Al Dobowi employs online advertising, which is mainly through the social media and digital marketplaces, using targeted audiences in specific regions with custom-made advertisements for the campaigns. The advertisements frequently emphasize Al Dobowi's sustainable activities to attract environmentally conscious consumers by highlighting the products that are environmentally sustainable, such as low-resistance tyres or recyclable materials (Al Dobowi Group, 2012).

Corporate Social Responsibility

Corporate Social Responsibility (CSR) is a company's commitment towards fulfilling its societal responsibilities and being involved in volunteer activities (Carroll, 2021). Al Dobowi Group has a strong commitment to CSR, expressed in large social projects and initiatives that are mainly focused on development, education, and the environment. For example, during the COVID-19 pandemic, the Group made significant contributions to many charitable organizations and provided meal boxes to labour camps. In recent years, it also provided essential materials for earthquake rescue operations and handed them over to the Red Crescent. Al Dobowi Group focuses on sustainable practices in its operations by manufacturing environmentally friendly products and follows green manufacturing processes.

This is evident by the utilization of more than 80% recycled materials in lead-acid batteries, which are 99% recyclable, promoting a circular economy and highlighting solar energy storage alongside sustainability mandates in the UAE (Gulf News, 2023). The leadership of the group, especially Chairman Surender Singh Kandhari regularly engages actively in community development initiatives. In 2020, Al Dobowi Group, in partnership with Ajman University, established "The Bubbles & Surender Singh Kandhari Scholarship Fund". This effort seeks to assist talented students in need, improving educational access and promoting academic performance. Through these CSR initiatives, Al Dobowi Group not only improves its business operations but also positively creates an impact on the society, embodying its fundamental principles of respect, integrity, and innovation.

Challenges in Local and International Markets

Running a business both in a home and host country presents enterprises to numerous challenges in sustaining their operations and accomplishing their desired goals (Shenkar, Luo, and Chi, 2021). These challenges normally arise from the competition, governmental regulations, evolving market needs, and currency volatility (Butler, 2016). Al Dobowi Group faces various challenges in international markets due to the constantly changing market needs. Economic instability in some markets is also evident via currency fluctuations and inflation that affect pricing and margins. The company also faces intense competition from both global and local competitors. Besides that, technological advancement in electric and driverless cars necessitate continuous investments in research and development. In some markets, sustainability concerns include stricter environmental regulations and a growing consumer demand for ecologically friendly products. Also, disparities in regions, compliance with regulations, and barriers to trade further complicate market expansion. Similarly, changing customer behaviors, such as the growth of e-commerce or a preference for sustainable practices, require digital transformation and the adoption of environmentally friendly practices. Finally, they operate in more than 45 countries, exposing it to changes in the exchange rates, which may affect prices and profits and cause a decline in consumer spending on premium items during economic recessions. In the emerging markets, price-sensitive customers may opt for locally-produced goods which may pose a challenge for Al Dobowi group.

Looking Ahead

Al Dobowi Group is strongly dedicated towards satisfying the changing market and industry needs by staying alert to regional and global demands. It continuously seeks dependable partners in order to deliver effective solutions, driven by the goals of securing a competitive advantage, fostering growth, and expediting achievement. Al Dobowi group consistently aspires to be the preeminent leader in the increasingly competitive industry, ensuring reliability in this dynamic and rapid environment, while also providing efficient logistics to its global clientele. It has been expanding swiftly throughout all global regions. It has also expanded its battery manufacturing and growth in distribution and retail, particularly in Africa, with Latin America being its most recent venture. The company has been notably involved in industrial contracting within Saudi Arabia and is extending its presence in that sector. Al Dobowi will continue to innovate and appeal to its target market by regularly introducing upgraded products at affordable prices while expanding its geographical reach around the globe.

Discussion Questions

1. Discuss the historical development of Al Dobowi Group.
2. Analyze the marketing strategies adopted by Al Dobowi Group in target markets. Do you agree with the promotion strategies followed by Al Dobowi Group? Justify your answer.
3. Evaluate the effectiveness of corporate social responsibility initiatives adopted by Al Dobowi Group.
4. Analyze the challenges faced by Al Dobowi Group in the UAE and international markets.

References

Al Dobowi Group (2024). *Al Dobowi Partners with Michelin to Expand its Brand Portfolio*. Accessed on 27 December 2024 from: https://aldobowi.ae/al-dobowi-partners-with-michelin-to-expand-its-brand-portfolio/

Al Dobowi Group (2024). *Infinity unveils its new international marketing strategy for 2012*. Accessed on 24 December 2024 from: https://news.cision.com/al-dobowi-group/r/infinity-unveils-its-new-international-marketing-strategy-for-2012,c9229871

Belch, G. E., & Belch, M. A. (2018). *Advertising and promotion: An integrated marketing communications perspective*. McGraw-Hill.

Butler, K. C. (2016). *Multinational finance: Evaluating the opportunities, costs, and risks of multinational operations*. John Wiley & Sons.

Carroll, A. B. (2021). Corporate social responsibility: Perspectives on the CSR construct's development and future. *Business & Society*, *60*(6), 1258-1278.

Constantinides, E. (2002). The 4S web-marketing mix model. *Electronic Commerce Research and applications*, *1*(1), 57-76.

Gulf News (2023). Al Dobowi Group: Specialising in tyre management and industrial batteries. Accessed on 8 June 2025 from: https://gulfnews.com/world/asia/india/al-dobowi-group-specialising-in-tyre-management-and-industrial-batteries-1.1674730284835

Khaleej Times (2024). *Driving the Future*. Accessed on 25 December 2024 from: https://www.khaleejtimes.com/supplements/driving-the-future.

Khaleej Times (2021). *Expansion Beyond Convention*. Accessed on 8 June 2025 from: https://www.khaleejtimes.com/supplements/expansion-beyond-convention

Kotler, P., Armstrong, G., & Opresnik, M. O. (2021). *Principles of Marketing, 18e Global Edition*. Pearson Education Limited.

Shenkar, O., Luo, Y., & Chi, T. (2021). *International business*. Routledge.

Wichmann, J. R., Uppal, A., Sharma, A., & Dekimpe, M. G. (2022). A global perspective on the marketing mix across time and space. *International Journal of Research in Marketing*, *39*(2), 502-521.

IIUM Journal of Case Studies in Management: Vol. 16, No. 2, August 2025, pp.126-136
ISSN: 2810-2327 e-ISSN: 2710-7175
Received: 14 July 2025 Reviewed: 20 July 2025 Revised: 21 July 2025 Accepted: 21 July 2025

Sustainable Marketing in Environmental Services: A Strategic Case Study of Alam Flora Environmental Solutions (AFES)

Siti Ruzana Binti Abdul Hamid
Graduate School of Management,
Kulliyyah of Economics and Management Sciences,
International Islamic University Malaysia.
E-mail: s.ruzanahamid@gmail.com

Fatin Husna Suib*
Assistant Professor,
Department of Business Administration,
Kulliyyah of Economics and Management Sciences,
International Islamic University Malaysia.
Email: fatinhusnasuib@iium.edu.my

Aysha Binti Zamuel
Graduate School of Management,
Kulliyyah of Economics and Management Sciences,
International Islamic University Malaysia.
E-mail: ayshazamuel@gmail.com

Khadijah Binti Shofi
Graduate School of Management,
Kulliyyah of Economics and Management Sciences,
International Islamic University Malaysia.
E-mail: khadijahshofi@gmail.com

Walinda Binti Muhamadtahed
Graduate School of Management,
Kulliyyah of Economics and Management Sciences,
International Islamic University Malaysia.
E-mail: walinda.mu@gmail.com

Sana Ahmed
Graduate School of Management,
Kulliyyah of Economics and Management Sciences,
International Islamic University Malaysia.
E-mail: ahmedsana.darj@gmail.com

Nuraymee Awaekuechi

Graduate School of Management,
Kulliyyah of Economics and Management Sciences,
International Islamic University Malaysia.
E-mail: nuraymee27691@gmail.com

Nurul Akmar Binti Abdul Karim
Head of Marketing Department,
Alam Flora Environmental Solutions Sdn. Bhd. (AFES),
Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia.
E-mail: nurulakmar@afes.com.my

(*) Corresponding Author

ABSTRACT

Alam Flora Environmental Solutions (AFES), a subsidiary of Alam Flora Sdn. Bhd. under Malakoff Corporation Berhad, is a leading Malaysian provider of integrated waste management, facility management, and sustainability solutions. Operating within the B2B sector, AFES adopts a hybrid marketing strategy that integrates digital platforms such as TikTok, Instagram, Facebook, and LinkedIn with on-ground initiatives including corporate networking events, public exhibitions, and educational outreach. This case study examines three core marketing initiatives: the “Scan and Score” and “WOW Box” programmes, which incentivise recycling through PETRONAS Mesra reward points, and strategic ESG-driven collaborations with corporations such as FMCG sectors, malls, financial institutions and many more. These initiatives collectively enhance AFES’s market positioning and support national environmental objectives. However, limitations remain in the company’s campaign evaluation process, which currently relies on basic enquiry tracking and general feedback rather than advanced analytics. To address this gap, the study recommends the integration of digital performance tools such as Google Analytics and CRM systems to enable data-driven decision-making. The findings underscore the importance of aligning innovative marketing tactics with sustainability goals and offer practical insights for environmental service providers seeking to strengthen competitive advantage through strategic, adaptive marketing.

Keywords: Sustainable Marketing, Environmental Services, Strategic Initiatives, ESG Integration, Recycling Engagement Programmes, Marketing Evaluation and Risk Management.

INTRODUCTION

In the era of heightened environmental awareness and corporate responsibility, sustainability has become a central pillar in modern business strategy. As organisations strive to align with global ESG (Environmental, Social, and Governance) standards, the role of strategic marketing in promoting sustainable practices has grown increasingly significant. Specifically in Malaysia’s context, there is an increasing trend in sustainability awareness through national development plans as well as involvement and collaborations with multiple stakeholders, leading to the successful implementation of various sustainability efforts throughout the years (Yusof & Ariffin, 2020). For instance, since Malaysia’s main economic drivers are within the industrial sectors such as palm oil, mining, and manufacturing, Malaysia has taken a proactive step in adopting green technologies to strike a balance between economic growth, environmental preservation, and addressing climate issues (Isa et al., 2021). Past literature has implied that there is a continuously growing demand for sustainability solutions and technologies.

This case study examines the marketing strategies of Alam Flora Environmental Solutions (AFES), a leading Malaysian environmental services provider under Alam Flora Sdn Bhd. AFES represents a forward-thinking approach to integrating environmental stewardship with market-driven initiatives, particularly through its targeted campaigns, corporate collaborations, and adaptive marketing methods.

By applying marketing principles such as the 4Ps framework, SMART objectives, and strategic evaluation and control mechanisms, AFES has successfully positioned itself as a pioneer in the sustainable services sector. Its innovative programmes, such as *"Scan and Score"* and *"WOW Box"* as well as collaborations with corporates like FMCG sectors, malls, financial institutions, and many more, highlight how environmental responsibility can be effectively communicated and operationalised. This paper explores how AFES's strategies are designed, implemented, evaluated, and adjusted in response to changing market dynamics and public engagement challenges. Additionally, the discussion addresses practical implications for similar businesses and proposes future research directions further to investigate the intersection between sustainability and marketing effectiveness.

COMPANY OVERVIEW: ALAM FLORA ENVIRONMENTAL SOLUTIONS (AFES)

Alam Flora Environmental Solutions (AFES), a subsidiary of Alam Flora Sdn. Bhd. under Malakoff Corporation Berhad, is a Malaysian environmental services company offering integrated solutions beyond traditional waste management. Positioned within the B2B sector, AFES provides facility management, infrastructure cleansing, specialised waste treatment, and recycling services, contributing to national sustainability and ESG objectives. With advanced facilities such as RISE Kuala Lumpur and FIKS Putrajaya, the company supports the government's target of achieving a 40% recycling rate by 2025. Under the leadership of the Head of Marketing Department, Nurul Akmar binti Abdul Karim, AFES implements strategic marketing initiatives that blend traditional media with digital platforms, engaging clients through innovative campaigns like "Scan and Score" and the "WOW Box." Collaborative efforts with corporations like those mentioned above further reflect its commitment to community engagement and sustainable practices. With aspirations to become Malaysia's leading sustainability solutions provider, AFES continues to enhance its outreach through trend-responsive marketing, loyalty programmes, and influencer engagement.

STRATEGIC MARKETING OBJECTIVES OF ALAM FLORA ENVIRONMENTAL SOLUTIONS: A SMART FRAMEWORK APPROACH

Alam Flora Environmental Solutions (AFES) has developed structured marketing objectives aligned with its broader mission to promote sustainability while enhancing its corporate presence in Malaysia. By applying the SMART framework (Specific, Measurable, Achievable, Relevant, and Time-bound), AFES ensures that its marketing strategies are goal-oriented, results-driven, and aligned with national environmental priorities.

According to Yurovskaya (2017), the SMART framework is a contemporary method for setting objectives for work activities. Setting SMART goals enables the integration of all available data, defining the appropriate scope of work, assessing resource availability, and assigning definitive, exact, explicit, and detailed responsibilities to each participant. SMART is an abbreviation of Specific, Measurable, Achievable, Relevant, and Time-bound. SMART goals are a vital element that needs to be considered when formulating marketing strategies, as the integration of both helps companies to enhance the suitability and effectiveness of their marketing activities (Kilani, 2021).

1. **Specific: Enhancing Market Visibility through Targeted Campaigns**

AFES aims to increase brand recognition and public understanding of its service offerings, which include integrated facility management, waste treatment, and recycling solutions. These campaigns are tailored toward corporate and government audiences, using digital platforms and on-ground events. *"Our primary objectives are brand awareness, customer acquisition, customer retention, and also lead generation." (Akmar, N., personal interview, January 28, 2025).* This clear articulation underscores the company's focused intention to expand its visibility and influence.

2. **Measurable: Tracking Engagement and Campaign Outcomes**

To ensure that these objectives lead to tangible outcomes, AFES employs performance indicators such as enquiries received, leads generated, and engagement with promotional programmes. Campaigns like "Scan and Score" and the "WOW Box" provide measurable feedback loops. *"We do get inquiries from our customers because when they see our campaign… they would contact us and also tell us what they want." (Akmar, N., personal interview, January 28, 2025).* This feedback mechanism allows the company to refine its strategies based on real-time interactions.

3. **Achievable: Integrating Traditional and Digital Channels with On-Ground Initiatives**

AFES's marketing strategy is grounded in a balanced use of digital, traditional, and on-site methods, supported by a structured budget and resource planning. *"I would segregate [the budget] based on the units I have, like media coverage, advertising, promotion for social media, managing, and event management." (Akmar, N., personal interview, January 28, 2025).* This indicates a practical, well-organised approach that ensures marketing goals are realistically achievable within existing resources and operational frameworks.

4. **Relevant: Aligning with ESG Objectives and National Sustainability Goals**

All marketing efforts by AFES directly support its mission to foster environmental stewardship and assist clients in meeting their ESG commitments. This includes public engagement, educational talks, and collaborative initiatives with companies such as the FMCG sector, malls, financial institutions, and many more. *"We give awareness talks… on sustainable waste management… to support them for them to achieve their ESG initiatives." (Akmar, N., personal interview, January 28, 2025).* This illustrates the deep integration between AFES's marketing strategies and the broader sustainability agenda.

5. **Time-bound: Driving Results within Strategic Timelines**

AFES sets its marketing strategies within structured timelines, aligned with both internal fiscal planning and national sustainability targets. For example, the company's recycling initiatives are designed to support Malaysia's aim of achieving a 40% recycling rate by 2025. *"We support the government's initiative… to get the recycling rate up to 40% by the year 2025." (Akmar, N., personal interview, January 28, 2025).* This time-specific objective anchors the company's efforts in measurable national progress.

By aligning its marketing strategies with the SMART framework and grounding them in operational realities and national objectives, AFES demonstrates a strong, structured approach to advancing sustainability and stakeholder engagement in Malaysia's environmental services sector.

STRATEGIC INITIATIVES FOR MARKET LEADERSHIP: ENHANCING AFES'S COMPETITIVE ADVANTAGE IN THE ENVIRONMENTAL SERVICES INDUSTRY

Since Alam Flora Environmental Solutions (AFES) operates within the B2B (Business to Business) sector, the company is primarily focused on offering its services and expertise in environmental solutions to other companies or government entities. AFES, like any other business, aims to maximise revenue from the sale of the company's products and services. To achieve this goal, leveraging competitive advantages and implementing effective strategies are crucial to adapt and remain relevant in the dynamic business landscape in Malaysia (Kassim et al., 2025).

Based on the interview transcript with Puan Nurul Akmar binti Abdul Karim, AFES has implemented several strategic initiatives that reinforce its competitive advantage and strengthen its market positioning. The following are three standout initiatives that demonstrate AFES's commitment to innovation, relevance, and long-term impact in the environmental services industry.

1. **Integration of Loyalty-Based Recycling Programmes: "Scan and Score" and "WOW Box"**

One of AFES's most innovative strategies is the development of loyalty-driven recycling programmes designed to encourage sustainable behaviour among both the general public and corporate clients. The "Scan and Score" programme rewards individual recyclers with PETRONAS Mesra points, which can be redeemed for petrol or vouchers, while the "WOW Box" (War on Waste Box) is a corporate recycling initiative that allows offices to collect recyclables and also earn reward points. *"One of our marketing campaigns that we have… is for recycling. We have two, which is Scan and Score and also WOW Box recycling. Scan and Score is where they do recycling, they get extra reward PETRONAS Mesra reward points… For the WOW Box program, it's a recycling program also… where they recycle at their offices, they get PETRONAS Mesra reward points." (Akmar, N., personal interview, January 28, 2025).* These programmes not only promote eco-conscious habits but also differentiate AFES from traditional service providers by offering value-added incentives that enhance client engagement and satisfaction. According to Kassim et al. (2025), offering discounts and promotions while adopting a localised approach to marketing (via collaborations with PETRONAS) helps to increase participation and loyalty, as well as increase brand awareness.

2. **Strategic Corporate Collaborations for ESG Implementation**

AFES has formed impactful partnerships with major corporations like FMCG sectors, malls, financial institutions and many more, supporting both their internal sustainability goals and national ESG agendas. These partnerships are structured around the concept of Extended Producer Responsibility (EPR) and provide tangible outcomes for both the community and the environment. For instance, AFES collaborates with Nestlé to collect recyclables directly from households, while the 7-Eleven GoGreen campaign is designed to empower the B40 community by enabling income through recycling initiatives. *"We have currently a few collaborations with corporates. One of them is Nestlé… where we collect recyclables at housing areas from house to house… The second one is with 7-Eleven for their GoGreen campaign… to help the B40 community get more income through recycling." (Akmar, N., personal interview, January 28, 2025).* These strategic alliances not only position AFES as a sustainability partner of choice but also deepen its social impact and visibility within the community. Kassim et al. (2025) noted that building and maintaining strong relationships with other businesses by providing added value to them is among the suggested strategies B2B businesses can adopt to ensure sustainable revenue.

3. Trend-Responsive Digital and On-Ground Marketing Strategy

To maintain relevance in a rapidly evolving market, AFES has adopted a hybrid marketing model that combines modern digital outreach with traditional and in-person engagement. On the digital front, AFES actively creates promotional content across platforms like TikTok, Instagram, LinkedIn, and Facebook, tailoring content to different generational audiences. Simultaneously, it organises on-ground activities such as awareness talks, high tea networking events, and participation in expos to build direct relationships with corporate and government stakeholders. *"Digital marketing now is in trend… so my social media team… we are now doing a lot of content through social media… We do our promotion through a lot of videos nowadays… We also do on-ground events like exhibitions, awareness talks, and high tea events for top-level decision-makers." (Akmar, N., personal interview, January 28, 2025).* This dual strategy maximises AFES's outreach while catering to both digitally savvy audiences and traditional corporate decision-makers, thereby strengthening brand trust and visibility. With the growing trend of e-commerce and its significant contribution to the economy, it is essential for businesses to adopt current digital marketing tools and observe the latest trends online. Nonetheless, the need for digitalisation does not negate the importance of participating in physical events and exhibitions, as they are opportunities for companies to broaden their network and introduce their products and services through market education, which in return will strengthen brand awareness (Kassim et al., 2025).

In summary, these three strategic initiatives of reward-based recycling campaigns, corporate ESG collaborations, and a hybrid marketing approach underscore AFES's proactive and innovative role in the environmental sector. By aligning its business strategies with sustainability trends and market expectations, AFES is well-positioned as a dynamic and responsible leader in Malaysia's environmental solutions industry.

TACTICAL MARKETING APPROACHES SUPPORTING STRATEGIC INITIATIVES AT AFES: A 4PS PERSPECTIVE

Alam Flora Environmental Solutions (AFES) adopts a comprehensive marketing approach grounded in the marketing mix of Product, Price, Place, and Promotion (4Ps) to effectively support its strategic initiatives. These tactical elements enhance the reach, relevance, and impact of its sustainability campaigns, helping to solidify AFES's position in Malaysia's environmental services industry. In the business environment, there are various methods can that be employed to achieve a competitive advantage over competitors, all of which focus on delivering value that is perceived as unmatched by clients. The marketing mix is a commonly used strategy, as it has been proven to have a positive and significant influence on competitive advantage, based on a study by Juju and Supriadi (2024).

1. Product: Value-Added Environmental Solutions

AFES's product offerings go beyond waste collection to deliver environmental impact and social value. Through initiatives such as "Scan and Score" and "WOW Box", AFES makes recycling accessible, measurable, and rewarding. These initiatives offer tangible benefits through PETRONAS Mesra reward points, turning recycling into an engaging activity for individuals and corporate clients. The WOW Box also serves as a visual, branded reminder of environmental commitment in office spaces.

"*One of our marketing campaigns that we have… is for recycling. We have two, which is Scan and Score and also WOW Box recycling. Scan and Score is where they do recycling, they get extra PETRONAS Mesra reward points… For the WOW Box program, it's a recycling program also… where they recycle at their offices, they get PETRONAS Mesra reward points.*" *(Akmar, N., personal interview, January 28, 2025).* These programmes embody AFES's strategy to embed environmental responsibility into daily behaviour while building brand differentiation.

2. **Price: Incentive-Based and Accessible Offerings**

AFES utilises a pricing strategy that prioritises accessibility and participation. The "Scan and Score" and "WOW Box" programmes are free of charge to the public and business clients, removing cost barriers while delivering added value through rewards. For corporate services, pricing is negotiated through custom contracts, sometimes supported by public-private partnerships or CSR-linked subsidies.

On this approach, Puan Akmar shared, *"We give them extra rewards so that they will be motivated to recycle. There's no charge to them, and they actually gain something in return." (Akmar, N., personal interview, January 28, 2025).* This reflects a value-driven pricing model that supports both environmental action and customer satisfaction without requiring financial investment from users.

3. **Place: Accessible and Localised Service Delivery**

AFES designs its service delivery for convenience and proximity, ensuring participation is practical and consistent. The "WOW Box" is placed in offices, while "Scan and Score" operates through home pick-ups and designated drop-off locations, often in partnership with brands like Nestlé. These placements make it easier for both individuals and businesses to take part in recycling.

As described by Puan Akmar, *"We collect recyclables at housing areas from house to house," (Akmar, N., personal interview, January 28, 2025).* This is emphasising AFES's flexible and decentralised service model that meets the needs of both urban households and corporate clients.

4. **Promotion: Digital Innovation and On-Ground Engagement**

AFES leverages a hybrid promotional strategy that combines digital media with traditional outreach. It uses platforms such as TikTok, Instagram, Facebook, and LinkedIn to distribute content tailored to varied demographics. This digital-first approach is complemented by exhibitions, awareness talks, and high tea networking sessions to reach corporate stakeholders and the public alike.

Puan Akmar explained, *"Digital marketing now is in trend… so my social media team… we are now doing a lot of content through social media… We also do on-ground events like exhibitions, awareness talks, and high tea events for top-level decision-makers." She further added, "We still have mainstream media marketing… but we are also doing a lot of content through social media." (Akmar, N., personal interview, January 28, 2025).* These promotional efforts reflect AFES's commitment to reaching diverse audiences through both modern and conventional methods.

AFES's strategic use of the 4Ps demonstrates how marketing can be effectively integrated with sustainability and stakeholder engagement. Through innovative product offerings, accessible pricing, decentralised service delivery, and hybrid promotional channels, AFES strengthens its brand presence while advancing Malaysia's environmental goals. The alignment of tactical execution with strategic vision positions AFES as a leader in marketing-driven environmental responsibility.

EVALUATION, CONTROL, AND RISK MANAGEMENT IN AFES'S MARKETING STRATEGY

As AFES expands its market engagement and sustainability-driven campaigns, the effectiveness and stability of its marketing strategies depend on clear evaluation mechanisms and robust risk management. The company's ability to adapt, assess, and mitigate challenges is critical to maintaining its competitive edge in Malaysia's environmental services industry. This section outlines how AFES evaluates its marketing efforts and manages potential risks through practical and flexible approaches.

1. Evaluation and Control Mechanisms

To maintain efficiency and strategic focus, AFES conducts annual marketing planning exercises beginning mid-year, where the upcoming year's campaigns are structured and budgeted by function. *"Basically at the middle of the year, I would usually do my plan… segregate based on the units I have like media coverage, advertising, promotion, social media, and event management." (Akmar, N., personal interview, January 28, 2025).* This structured segmentation allows for targeted investment in key areas and enables clearer tracking of performance. The company evaluates its marketing activities based on observable outputs such as the number of customer enquiries, social media engagement, and participation in both online and on-ground campaigns. While AFES currently does not employ advanced analytics tools such as Google Analytics, there is room for enhancement in this area. *"Currently we don't… we don't engage with any analytics," (Akmar, N., personal interview, January 28, 2025)* suggesting a future opportunity to integrate digital performance metrics for more precise assessment and optimisation.

2. Risk Management and Contingency Planning

AFES faces challenges common in service-based industries, particularly regarding public perception and behavioural inertia toward sustainability. One of the core obstacles is the lack of awareness about recycling and intangible services. *"Sometimes people are still not aware about recycling and about our service… for services you make you work a lot harder to sell."(Akmar, N., personal interview, January 28, 2025).* In response, AFES deploys educational campaigns and community engagement efforts to increase understanding and support. In addition, the company actively diversifies its communication channels, reducing dependency on volatile digital trends. Should social media campaigns underperform due to algorithm shifts or content fatigue, AFES can pivot to on-ground activities such as talks, expos, and exhibitions. *"We have better engagements when we are on ground and face to face with clients and potential clients," (Akmar, N., personal interview, January 28, 2025).* This built-in flexibility functions as a natural contingency plan that ensures outreach remains effective regardless of channel performance. Moreover, partnerships with major corporations like FMCG sectors, malls, financial institutions and many more, further distribute promotional risk and amplify programme credibility through shared branding and resource allocation.

AFES demonstrates a strong understanding of both the need for systematic evaluation and the realities of market uncertainty. By combining structured budgeting and performance tracking with responsive, ground-level engagement strategies, AFES effectively balances ambition with resilience. These practices ensure that the company not only remains adaptable in a fast-changing marketing environment but also continues to lead by example in the promotion of sustainable environmental practices in Malaysia.

CONCLUSION

The analysis of Alam Flora Environmental Solutions' (AFES) marketing strategy reveals a comprehensive, multi-layered approach to promoting environmental services through structured planning, innovative campaigns, and strategic partnerships. One of the key findings from the transcript is the company's commitment to sustainability, not only in service delivery but also in its marketing execution. The use of reward-based recycling programmes such as *"Scan and Score"* and *"WOW Box"* demonstrates a creative alignment between consumer engagement and environmental responsibility. These initiatives stand out as practical, scalable models for incentivising sustainable behaviour, especially within corporate ESG frameworks.

Another significant insight is the effectiveness of a dual-channel marketing strategy that integrates digital platforms with on-ground outreach. AFES's success lies in its ability to tailor its communication methods to varied audience segments, from tech-savvy youth on social media to corporate decision-makers via LinkedIn and high-touch networking events. As highlighted in the interview *"We do our promotion through a lot of videos nowadays... on our social media platform,"* and *"We have better engagements when we are on ground and face to face with clients and potential clients." (Akmar, N., personal interview, January 28, 2025).* These statements reinforce the value of adaptability in marketing communications, especially in a service-based industry where brand trust and clarity of messaging are crucial.

The evaluation and control practices at AFES are also notable, particularly in the structured mid-year planning process and the allocation of budgets by functional areas. Although current evaluation methods are largely observational and engagement-based, the lack of digital analytics tools presents a development opportunity. Future integration of metrics such as conversion rates, click-through rates, and customer journey mapping could enhance the accuracy and depth of campaign assessment.

From a practical standpoint, businesses aiming to integrate sustainability into their brand strategy can learn from AFES's model. Reward-based engagement, corporate partnerships, and education-driven marketing not only enhance public participation but also improve brand loyalty and stakeholder alignment. Moreover, the contingency mechanisms embedded in AFES's marketing, such as shifting from digital to on-ground strategies in response to performance, offer a replicable framework for managing campaign risks in uncertain environments.

Future research could explore the quantitative impact of reward-based environmental campaigns on consumer behaviour over time, examining metrics such as customer retention, brand perception, and waste reduction outcomes. Additionally, more empirical studies are needed to evaluate how ESG-aligned marketing strategies influence B2B relationships, especially in Southeast Asia's emerging green economy. Exploring the integration of marketing analytics in sustainability-focused industries would also offer valuable insights for data-driven decision-making.

In conclusion, the case of AFES illustrates how an environmentally focused organisation can leverage strategic marketing, cross-sector collaboration, and community engagement to build both commercial and ecological value. Its practices offer relevant lessons for businesses navigating the intersection of sustainability, innovation, and market competitiveness.

DISCUSSION QUESTIONS

1. How does AFES integrate sustainability into its marketing strategy?

2. What are the advantages and limitations of the current campaign evaluation methods used by AFES?
3. Discuss how the 4Ps framework is applied in AFES's marketing mix.
4. What role do strategic partnerships play in AFES's success?
5. What improvements could AFES make to enhance its marketing effectiveness and long-term impact?

REFERENCES

Isa, N. M., Sivapathy, A., & Adjrina Kamarruddin, N. N. (2021). Malaysia on the way to sustainable development: Circular economy and green technologies. In *Modeling economic growth in contemporary Malaysia* (pp. 91–115). Emerald Publishing Limited.

Juju, U., & Supriadi, T. (2024). Marketing mix strategy, marketing relationship strategy, and marketing performance: The mediating role of competitive advantage. *Jurnal Riset Bisnis dan Manajemen*, 17(1), 29–40.

Kassim, Z., Mohamed, H. A. B., Azmi, I. A. G., & Rahim, H. (2025). B2B and B2C marketing in the dynamic landscape of Malaysian business. In *Dynamic strategies for entrepreneurial marketing* (pp. 195–218). IGI Global Scientific Publishing.

Kilani, Y. M. (2021). SMART business role in supporting marketing strategies among telecommunication organizations in Jordan. *Turkish Journal of Computer and Mathematics Education*, 12(6), 4568–4582.

Yurovskaya, M. B. (2017). Use of the SOSTAC model and SMART method in developing marketing campaigns. In *Science, education, society: Trends and development prospects* (pp. 238–239).

Yusof, M. I. B. M., & Ariffin, M. (2020, May). A journey towards sustainability: A review on sustainable development implementation in Malaysia. In *IOP Conference Series: Earth and Environmental Science* (Vol. 494, No. 1, p. 012011). IOP Publishing.

IIUM Journal of Case Studies in Management: Vol. 16, No. 2, August 2025, pp. 137 - 146
ISSN: 2810-2327 e-ISSN: 2710-7175
Received: 14 July 2025 Reviewed: 20 July 2025 Revised: 21 July 2025 Accepted: 21 July 2025

A Premium Taste from the Desert to the Table: A Marketing Case Study on Ilhamtaufiq Group Sdn Bhd

Saleem Subhani
Graduate School of Management,
Kulliyyah of Economics and Management Sciences,
International Islamic University Malaysia.
E-mail: ssaleem229@gmail.com

Fatin Husna Suib*
Assistant Professor,
Department of Business Administration,
Kulliyyah of Economics and Management Sciences,
International Islamic University Malaysia.
Email: fatinhusnasuib@iium.edu.my

Mohammad Imrul Kayes Tuhin
Graduate School of Management,
Kulliyyah of Economics and Management Sciences,
International Islamic University Malaysia.
E-mail: imrulkayes337@gmail.com

Muhammad Haykal Fahim bin Mohd Kamaludin
Graduate School of Management,
Kulliyyah of Economics and Management Sciences,
International Islamic University Malaysia.
E-mail: haykal.fahim@gmail.com

Muhammad Hanis Bin Safiai
Graduate School of Management,
Kulliyyah of Economics and Management Sciences,
International Islamic University Malaysia.
E-mail: hanissafiai10@gmail.com

Yogadevan A/L Murkan
Graduate School of Management,
Kulliyyah of Economics and Management Sciences,
International Islamic University Malaysia.
E-mail: yogadevan@gmail.com

Muhammed Shamil
Graduate School of Management,
Kulliyyah of Economics and Management Sciences,
International Islamic University Malaysia.
E-mail:shalusha786pp@gmail.com

Muhammad Taufiq Firdaus Ishak
Co-Owner, Ilhamtaufiq Group Sdn Bhd
E-mail : mtfirdaus2@gmail.com

(*) Corresponding Author

ABSTRACT
Ilhamtaufiq Group Sdn Bhd is a Malaysian food importer and reseller founded during the COVID-19 pandemic 2019. Led by founder Muhammad Taufiq Firdaus Bin Ishak, the company built a niche in frozen fresh dates (Kurma Sejok), later expanding to products like Bilis Bersih (pre-cleaned anchovies), Turkish cherries, and seasonal mangoes. Its marketing strategy hinges on digital platforms such as TikTok, Instagram, and Facebook, supported by influencer partnerships, consistent paid advertising, and a vast agent network. Despite strong brand recall, the company faces challenges like competition from Arab traders, limited product availability due to seasonality, and reliance on high digital ad spend. This case study reviews existing goals, implementation tactics, and evaluation methods, while offering improvements in agent training, AI-based targeting, content personalization, and expanded year-round product lines. Ilhamtaufiq Group demonstrates how small businesses can carve out competitive space by combining cultural relevance, strategic digital execution, and emotional storytelling.

Keywords: Frozen Dates, Digital Marketing, Agent-Based Distribution, Seasonal Product Strategy, Influencer Marketing, Malaysian Food Industry.

FROM PILGRIMAGE TO PREMIUM: THE ILHAMTAUFIQ STORY OF FAITH, FOOD, AND FORTITUDE
Ilhamtaufiq Group Sdn Bhd began in 2019, when founder Muhammad Taufiq returned from Umrah and discovered the potential of bringing fresh frozen dates to Malaysia. *"The idea came from my family's Umrah trip before the COVID-19 pandemic. We discovered fresh dates that are not common in Malaysia... I thought it was very special,"* said Mr. Taufiq.

Despite launching during the challenging COVID-19 period, the company successfully navigated the logistics of cold chain imports, distributing Kurma Sejok in 40-tonne shipments. Headquartered in Sungai Long, Kajang, the company now offers various premium food products through agent-based direct sales and digital platforms. Their customers are mainly Malaysian Muslims seeking high-quality produce with nostalgic and spiritual value.

Muhammad Taufiq Firdaus is a young entrepreneur who transitioned from a personal discovery during a religious journey to pioneering fresh date imports in Malaysia. With no prior background in FMCG, he learned logistics, marketing, and sales independently. His resilience during the pandemic allowed him to scale his business by recruiting over 500 agents and capitalizing on a digital-first approach. Today, he continues to drive the company's vision through seasonal innovation and influencer-driven campaigns.

SMART MARKETING GOALS: LIGHTING THE PATH TO SUCCESS
Ilhamtaufiq Group's marketing objectives are strategically crafted to harness seasonal opportunities, strengthen brand equity, and drive consistent sales growth. Aligning objectives with the SMART framework — as emphasized by Chowdhury and Quaddus (2022) — enables businesses to maintain operational focus in dynamic and competitive environments. Each goal also directly addresses the company's unique challenges, including seasonality fluctuations, digital marketing competition, and reliance on a decentralized agent network.

Goal 1: Ignite Viral Reach for Kurma Sejok During Ramadan

The primary objective is to achieve a viral surge in product visibility during the four weeks leading up to Ramadan. The company aims to triple its return on ad spend (ROAS) through intensified social media campaigns, influencer collaborations, and targeted digital ads. This goal leverages proven past successes, as Mr. Taufiq shared, *“I want to make sure the Kurma Sejok goes viral again… just like during the COVID-19 season.” (Ishak, M. T. F., personal interview, 6 March 2025).*

Goal 2: Expand The Agent Network Across Malaysia
Recognizing that agent presence is critical for frozen product distribution, Ilhamtaufiq Group plans to grow its active agent base by 30%, focusing on underserved regions such as Sabah, Sarawak, and the East Coast, as highlighted by Iqbal and Rahman (2022).
As Taufiq emphasized, *“The higher the agent number, the higher the success rate… if I don’t have any agents there, I cannot sell.” (Ishak, M. T. F., personal interview, 6 March 2025).*

Goal 3: Strengthen Brand Presence with Celebrity Collaborations
To deepen trust and widen market reach, the company usually collaborates with Malaysian leading Key Opinion Leaders (KOL) every year, running paid promotional campaigns strategically before Ramadan and Eid. Taufiq explained the importance of this move: *“I will find an engaging local influencer that has a very high number of followers to promote our products.” (Ishak, M. T. F., personal interview, 6 March 2025).*

Each goal is strategically formulated to address Ilhamtaufiq Group’s operational realities — namely, maximizing seasonal momentum, expanding distribution reach, and elevating emotional brand engagement — ensuring sustainable growth in an increasingly competitive market.

ILHAMTAUFIQ GROUP’S SMART MARKETING GOALS & OBJECTIVES

📌 **Goal**	📝 **SMART Breakdown**

🚀 ***Go Viral with Kurma Sejok During Ramadan***	🎯**Specific**: Focus on Kurma Sejok as the flagship seasonal product 📊**Measurable**: Track engagement, shares, ad conversions ✅ **Achievable**: Leverage past viral success 📅**Relevant**: Align with peak Ramadan demand ⏳**Time-bound**: Achieve viral reach within 4 weeks pre-Ramadan
🌍 ***Expand Nationwide Agent Network***	🎯**Specific**: Recruit agents in Sabah, Sarawak, East Coast 📊**Measurable**: Monitor the number of active agents and territory coverage ✅**Achievable**: Use incentives, testimonials, digital outreach 📅**Relevant**: Agents drive primary sales ⏳**Time-bound**: Reach by Q2 2025
Boost Online Brand Presence via Influencers	🎯**Specific**: Engage 3–5 public figures for promotions 📊**Measurable**: Track influencer reach, referral codes,and tagged content ✅**Achievable**: Proven via past celebrity promos 📅**Relevant**: Builds trust among niche Muslim consumers ⏳**Time-bound**: Campaigns before Ramadan & Eid

STRATEGIC SHIELDS: DEFENDING AND EXPANDING THE ILHAMTAUFIQ LEGACY

Marketing strategy can be defined as an organization's integrated pattern of choices about products, markets, marketing activities, and marketing resources, according to Patrick, Z., & Hee, O. C. (2022). Ilhamtaufiq Group adopts a digital-first, emotionally driven marketing strategy to amplify product uniqueness, cultural sentiment, and brand presence during peak sales seasons. Ilhamtaufiq Group adopts a digital-first, emotionally driven marketing strategy to amplify product uniqueness, cultural sentiment, and brand presence during peak sales seasons. Chatterjee, Rana, Tamilmani, and Sharma (2021) emphasize that effective social media marketing activities, including emotional storytelling and influencer collaborations, significantly enhance consumer buying intention. The company's approach is centered around storytelling, leveraging short videos on TikTok and Instagram to highlight the freshness and exclusivity of its flagship product, Kurma Sejok. This strategy resonates strongly with local Muslim audiences, particularly during Ramadan month.

The company's marketing direction is built around three core strategic initiatives:

Emotional Storytelling: Turning Dates into Memories

The brand consistently produces engaging digital content, emphasizing spiritual and emotional connections to its products. This emotional branding strengthens loyalty and positions Kurma Sejok as part of customers' Ramadan traditions.

Mr. Taufiq stated, *"I need to create more engaging content and boost the posts… you use the app manager and you boost the post like that." (Ishak, M. T. F., personal interview, 6 March 2025)*.

Star Power Moves: Influencers And Celebrity Magic

Ilhamtaufiq Group Sdn Bhd partners with local influencers and celebrities to promote its products, particularly before Ramadan and Eid, building trust and visibility among wider audiences.

Mr. Taufiq shared, *"I will find an engaging local influencer that has a very high number of followers to promote our product and also use a celebrity to make a professional video." (Ishak, M. T. F., personal interview, 6 March 2025)*.

Building Champions: Empowering Agents For Growth

A robust agent network forms the backbone of Ilhamtaufiq's distribution model. The company focuses on training and rewarding agents to boost retention and expand market reach, especially into less-served regions.

As Mr. Taufiq explained, *"I will give a reward to the top performer… so they're not gonna become my potential competitors." (Ishak, M. T. F., personal interview, 6 March 2025).*

Together, these initiatives position Ilhamtaufiq Group as a digitally agile, emotionally resonant, and agent-driven brand within Malaysia's competitive food-import market.

SWOT SPOTLIGHT: KNOWING THE STRENGTHS, FACING THE THREATS

According to the International Journal of Advanced Research (2023). SWOT Analysis can be defined as a method used to evaluate the Strengths, Weaknesses, Opportunities, and Threats involved in an organization, a plan, a project, a program, a person, or any kind of business activities. International Journal of Advanced Research. (2023).

Ilhamtaufiq Group Sdn Bhd demonstrates several key strengths that contribute to its market position. The company benefits from offering unique, premium products such as *Kurma Sejok*, which enjoy high seasonal demand. It effectively utilizes an agent-based distribution model to ensure product quality and extend its market reach. Furthermore, Ilhamtaufiq invests significantly in digital marketing strategies and partners with influencers to amplify brand visibility and consumer engagement, giving it a strong presence across digital platforms.

Despite these strengths, the company faces notable weaknesses. Its reliance on agents limits its geographic expansion, and high product pricing may affect accessibility for price-sensitive consumers. Moreover, the company's logistics system, which depends on bus networks, poses operational challenges. The seasonal nature of its products and the lack of an e-commerce platform for distributing frozen goods further constrain its growth potential and restricts its ability to tap into wider markets.

Ilhamtaufiq Group Sdn Bhd also has substantial opportunities for expansion and improvement. These include extending its agent network into new regions, diversifying into more seasonal and local product lines, and enhancing its marketing reach through platforms like TikTok and Instagram. By strengthening brand storytelling and implementing referral or loyalty programs, the company can deepen customer engagement and build long-term brand loyalty, driving sustained growth.

However, the company must also navigate external threats. Rising competition from other brands offering similar seasonal products, increasing logistics and import costs, and unpredictable social media algorithm changes can all impact its operations. Economic downturns may reduce consumer spending on premium goods, and the limited shelf life of its products heightens pressure on timely sales and efficient distribution. These factors could hinder profitability if not managed strategically.

ACTIONING THE VISION: ILHAMTAUFIQ'S TACTICAL MARKETING ENGINE

Ilhamtaufiq Group's marketing tactics are carefully structured around the traditional 4Ps of Marketing, namely Product, Price, Place, and Promotion, tailored to the unique demands of Malaysia's seasonal food market and agent-based distribution model. According to Bui and Le (2022), the 4Ps framework remains an effective tool in aligning marketing strategies with customer expectations, especially within fast-moving consumer goods sectors like food and beverages.

Product

The company offers a niche portfolio of premium products, headlined by Kurma Sejok, a fresh frozen date product positioned as a luxury seasonal delicacy during Ramadan. Other key offerings include Bilis Bersih (pre-cleaned anchovies), Turkish cherries, and Harumanis mangoes, each strategically selected for their high seasonal demand and market scarcity. Kurma Sejok, in particular, differentiates itself through its size, juiciness, and freshness — *"When you eat that, you won't feel like you're eating dates—you'll feel like you're eating a different kind of fruit." (Ishak, M. T. F., personal interview, 6 March 2025).*

Price

The business adopts a premium pricing strategy for its exclusive, high-quality products. Prices reflect the freshness, importation costs, and uniqueness of each product. During Ramadan, bundle promotions are offered to stimulate higher-volume purchases. As Mr. Taufiq stated, *"Kurma Sejok, I sell it for RM35 per pack, so in Ramadan I'm gonna do bundle deals like 3 packs for RM100." (Ishak, M. T. F., personal interview, 6 March 2025).*

Place

The distribution model is entirely agent-based to ensure frozen products like Kurma Sejok maintain their quality. The company utilizes bus transportation networks to deliver stocks to sales agents across Malaysia. This system ensures broad market coverage while preserving product freshness. *"Because it's a frozen product, you cannot post. So actually, in certain locations, if I don't have agents there, that means I cannot sell at that location." (Ishak, M. T. F., personal interview, 6 March 2025).*

Promotion

Ilhamtaufiq Group adopts a dynamic and digitally driven promotional strategy to maximize brand visibility and engagement. The company allocates between RM500 to RM1,000 daily for digital advertising across platforms such as TikTok, Instagram, and Facebook, leveraging paid social media to reach niche Muslim and foodie audiences. *"We allocate RM500 to RM1,000 daily for digital marketing and advertising." (Ishak, M. T. F., personal interview, 6 March 2025).*

Collaborations with celebrities and influencers are key components of the strategy, helping to expand the brand's reach and relevance. To enhance brand recall, the company also invests in professional video advertisements and brand jingles composed by local artists. In addition to customer-facing promotions, the company places strong emphasis on its agent network by offering targeted training programs and reward systems. *"I will focus more on agent training. I will help them to improve their sales skills, and this time I will give a reward to the top performer." (Ishak, M. T. F., personal interview, 6 March 2025).* Seasonal campaigns, such as Ramadan-exclusive bundle deals and discounts, further stimulate consumer interest and drive higher sales volumes. Promotion efforts are also grounded in community engagement through Telegram marketing and direct selling within the agents' networks, fostering closer customer relationships and trust.

This 4Ps tactical framework allows Ilhamtaufiq Group to maintain market relevance, sustain agent engagement, and scale brand visibility during critical sales periods like Ramadan.

ILHAMTAUFIQ GROUP'S 4PS MARKETING MIX

Ilhamtaufiq Group tactically applies the 4Ps framework to position its products as premium yet accessible.

Marketing Mix	📝 ***Definition***	🎯 ***Application at Ilhamtaufiq Group***
🍽 ***Product***	The goods and services offered to customers	☑ Fresh Frozen Kurma Sejok, Bilis Bersih, Turkish Cherries, and Harumanis Mangoes ☑ Focus on premium freshness, exclusive packaging, and nostalgic value tied to Umrah & Hajj experiences
💰 ***Price***	How the product is priced for the target market	☑ Premium pricing to reflect exclusivity ☑ Festive bundle deals (e.g., 3 Kurma Sejok packs for RM100 during Ramadan) ☑ Seasonal discount promotions to drive volume
📦 ***Place***	Where and how products reach the customers	☑ Nationwide distribution through agent network ☑ Bus transport for frozen goods delivery ☑ Focus on expanding to underserved states (Sabah, Sarawak, East Coast)
📣 ***Promotion***	Activities to increase product awareness and sales	☑ Daily social media ads (RM500–1,000/day on TikTok, Instagram, Facebook) ☑ Influencer & celebrity endorsements ☑ Brand jingles, Telegram channel marketing, and seasonal promotions

MEASURING IMPACT: KEEPING ILHAMTAUFIQ ON THE PATH TO EXCELLENCE

Ilhamtaufiq Group adopts a multidimensional approach to evaluating and controlling its marketing performance, focusing on brand visibility, conversion rates, agent expansion, and return on advertising spend (ROAS). The company actively tracks daily ad performance via platforms like Meta Ads Manager and TikTok Business Suite, adjusting budgets in real time based on profitability. As Mr. Taufiq explained, *"We allocate RM500–1,000 daily for digital marketing, which can give RM2,000–3,000 profit a day." (Ishak, M. T. F., personal interview, 6 March 2025).*

Brand Recognition: The First Success Checkpoint

Brand visibility remains the primary success benchmark. Organic buzz is measured through customer testimonials and spontaneous recognition, as when Mr. Taufiq shared, *"When my* *friend called me and said, 'I saw your Kurma Sejok inside my freezer,' for me, that means they know my brand." (Ishak, M. T. F., personal interview, 6 March 2025).* Research by Sjöberg (2019) reinforces that recognition across contexts—visual or verbal—indicates strong brand recall. Complementary digital metrics from TikTok, Instagram, and Facebook are also monitored.

Converting Awareness Into Sales: Monitoring Return on Ads Spend (ROAS).

Marketing effectiveness is further evaluated through direct sales conversion rates and ROAS analysis. Mr. Taufiq emphasized, *"If you do marketing but no sales, there's no point at all." (Ishak, M. T. F., personal interview, 6 March 2025)*. Campaign adjustments are based on influencer engagement, referral code tracking, and cost-per-acquisition trends to optimize profitability.

Expanding The Network: Agents As Strategic Growth Drivers

A growing agent network acts as another critical KPI. As Mr. Taufiq noted, *"The higher the agent number, the higher the success rate because when we recruit more agents, that means more sales and more locations we can cover." (Ishak, M. T. F., personal interview, 6 March 2025).* Recruitment campaigns, training sessions, and incentives are tracked to strategically expand coverage, particularly into underserved regions.

Safeguarding Success: Risk Management And Backup Plans

Risk management measures are in place through trademark protection, active community engagement, and contingency marketing plans. Ferreira, Jalali, and Ferreira (2020) emphasize that effective risk management involves preparing for both favorable and unfavorable future events. Should digital marketing channels falter, Ilhamtaufiq is prepared to revert to traditional marketing via trade shows, exhibitions, posters, and night markets—a backup system Mr. Taufiq described as essential for maintaining physical distribution strength.

Future Proofing With AI Precision

Looking ahead, Ilhamtaufiq is exploring AI-powered solutions, such as ChatGPT, for content ideation and predictive analytics tools, for better customer segmentation, personalized campaign timing, and ad efficiency. Huang and Rust (2020) highlight how AI can significantly improve customer acquisition cost efficiencies and optimize marketing interventions. These innovations complement the brand's daily rhythm of content creation and ad boosting—the "heartbeat of sales" strategy.

Cultural Resonance as a Differentiator

Emotional branding forms the core of Ilhamtaufiq's identity. Kurma Sejok is positioned not merely as food but as a symbolic memory of Umrah and Hajj experiences. Mr. Taufiq explained, *"It becomes part of the customer's identity and religious heritage." (Ishak, M. T. F., personal interview, 6 March 2025).* This emotional connection is deepened through premium packaging, compelling origin stories, and community-centered marketing efforts, ensuring the brand's long-term loyalty among Muslim consumers.

ILHAMTAUFIQ GROUP: MARKETING EVALUATION & CONTROL KPIs

KPI Area	Focus	Measurement Approach	Tools / Methods
Brand Visibility	Brand Recognition & Awareness	Organic mentions, customer testimonials, digital engagement metrics (TikTok, Instagram, Facebook)	Manual tracking, Meta Business Suite, TikTok Business Insights
Conversion & ROAS	Sales Conversion & Ad Profitability	Sales tracked against daily ad spend; ROAS ratio	Meta Ads Manager, TikTok Business Ads Dashboard
Agent Network Expansion	Distribution Coverage & Sales Expansion	Number of active agents, coverage in new regions (Sabah, Sarawak, East Coast)	CRM tools, manual agent tracking, territory maps
Risk Management	Operational Resilience	Trademark monitoring, alternative offline marketing readiness (trade shows, exhibitions)	Legal IP Registration, Event participation logs
AI-Driven Optimization	Future-proofed Precision Marketing	Customer segmentation, content personalization, campaign timing optimization	AI Tools (e.g., ChatGPT for idea generation, predictive analytics software)

CONCLUSION

Ilhamtaufiq Group has successfully built a strong market presence in Malaysia's food import industry by leveraging emotional storytelling, strategic influencer marketing, and an agent-based distribution network. Its flagship product, *Kurma Sejok*, resonates deeply with Muslim consumers, especially during Ramadan, due to its cultural and spiritual associations. Through effective use of digital platforms like TikTok and Instagram, along with a decentralized agent system, the company has established itself as a resilient and emotionally resonant brand.

However, long-term sustainability remains a concern due to its heavy reliance on seasonal demand, high digital advertising costs, and limited agent coverage in certain regions. To overcome these challenges, the company must diversify its product offerings beyond Ramadan-centric goods, adopt AI-powered marketing tools, expand its agent network strategically, and explore hybrid distribution models. Strengthening emotional branding across other religious or cultural moments, such as Hajj or Eid, could also help maintain year-round relevance. By doing so, Ilhamtaufiq has the potential to evolve from a seasonal success into a sustainable, nationwide brand.

DISCUSSION QUESTIONS

1. What makes Ilhamtaufiq's marketing strategy effective despite being a small business?
2. What are the limitations of relying heavily on seasonal products like Kurma Sejok?
3. How can Ilhamtaufiq optimize its digital marketing spend, given the high daily ad budget?
4. What role does cultural and emotional branding play in Ilhamtaufiq's customer loyalty?
5. Propose a strategic move to reduce the company's dependence on agents.

REFERENCES

Bui, L. T. T., & Le, V. T. (2022). Impact of marketing mix (4Ps) on customer buying behavior in food and beverage sector. Journal of Distribution Science, 20(7), 39–49. https://doi.org/10.15722/jds.20.07.202207.39

Chatterjee, S., Rana, N. P., Tamilmani, K., & Sharma, A. (2021). Understanding the role of social media marketing activities in consumer buying intention: A meta-analytic review. Journal of Retailing and Consumer Services, 61, 102569. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jretconser.2021.102569

Chowdhury, M., & Quaddus, M. (2022). Digital marketing strategy in the post-pandemic era: A systematic review and research agenda. Journal of Strategic Marketing, 30(6), 478–494. https://doi.org/10.1080/0965254X.2021.1928335

Ferreira, J. J. M., Jalali, M. S., & Ferreira, F. A. F. (2020). Risk management strategies for SMEs: An empirical analysis. Sustainability, 12(8), 3285. https://doi.org/10.3390/su12083285

Huang, M. H., & Rust, R. T. (2020). A strategic framework for artificial intelligence in marketing. Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science, 48(1), 30–50. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11747-019-00696-0

Iqbal, S., & Rahman, M. A. (2022). Strategic approaches for strengthening agent-based distribution channels in emerging markets. Journal of Business & Industrial Marketing, 37(7), 1400–1415. https://doi.org/10.1108/JBIM-08-2021-0385

Sjöberg, L. (2019). The concept of brand recognition in marketing psychology. International Journal of Research in Marketing, 36(1), 22–35.

IIUM Journal of Case Studies in Management: Vol. 16, No. 2, August 2025, pp. 147-151
ISSN: 2810-2327 e-ISSN: 2710-7175
Received: 20 August 2025 Reviewed: 22 August 2025 Revised: 22 August 2025 Accepted: 21 August 2025

Excella Archery Distribution Sdn. Bhd. and the Sunnah: A Business Journey to Restore The Prophetic Way of Life

Wan Rohaida Binti Wan Husain
Assistant Professor
wrohaida@iium.edu.my

Abstract:
This case study explores how Excella Archery Distribution Sdn. Bhd. can strategically position itself as a leading business that promotes the Sunnah of Prophet Muhammad ﷺ through the practice of archery, by leveraging the spiritual, educational, and cultural dimensions deeply rooted in Islamic heritage. Excella Archery was established in November 2018, motivated by the rising demand for quality archery equipment in Malaysia and Southeast Asia. Founded by sports retail entrepreneurs passionate about archery, the company operates from its headquarters in Melaka with outlets in Melaka and Kuala Lumpur. By aligning its brand identity with the Prophet's encouragement of archery, Excella Archery has the unique opportunity to differentiate itself in a competitive market through authentic faith-based engagement. The study outlines key strategies, including integrating Islamic teachings into training programmes, the development of culturally inspired products, community partnerships, and educational content creation. These initiatives nurture personal growth in discipline, focus, and spirituality and foster strong community bonds among Muslim consumers. Ultimately, this approach positions Excella Archery as a pioneer in combining business innovation with religious and cultural preservation, inspiring a new generation to embrace archery as a sport and a Sunnah.

Keywords: *Archery; Sunnah; Islamic Entrepreneurship; Excella Archery; Prophetic Tradition*

Introduction: Archery as a Business to Revive a Holistic Prophetic Lifestyle

Is it unethical to promote our product as a means to revive the prophetic lifestyle? Does associating our product with the prophetic lifestyle go against the virtue of earning through honest trade and business (Quran 11:85-86; Sunan al-Tirmidhi, Hadith 1209)? Excella Archery Distribution Sdn. Bhd. (https://ead-archery.com) has significant potential to position itself as a leading business that promotes the Sunnah of Prophet Muhammad ﷺ through archery by drawing inspiration from the spiritual traditions and cultural stories of Islamic archery.

Besides self-defence, archery is a highly recommended sport by the Prophet Muhammad ﷺ because physical skill developed via archery transforms oneself into a holistic discipline that shapes character and sharpens the mind. Beyond sport and recreation, it also acts as a doorway to spiritual growth. Archery requires consistent practice, patience, and precise control. Each shot requires accurate alignment of physical action with inner intentions. This process naturally cultivates patience, humility, and perseverance. In the Islamic tradition, archery is regarded as a Sunnah. Besides, the focus needed to hit the target helps train the mind to block out distractions, enhancing concentration in daily life beyond the sport, qualities that nurture the soul and foster a deeper connection with Allah. So, archery not only teaches us how to shoot arrows, but also trains us to become more patient and strong-willed in everyday life.

Excella Archery Distribution Sdn. Bhd.

Excella Distribution was established on 15 November 2018 by a group of entrepreneurs with a background in sports retail and a keen interest in archery. The company targets a niche market of premium archery products and expert services in Malaysia and Southeast Asia. The headquarters is in Alor Gajah, Melaka, with two main retail outlets, Excella Archery Proshop, in Melaka and Kuala Lumpur. The founding team were not immune to early challenges typical of a niche sports market, such as limited local supplier networks, a relatively low public awareness of archery as a competitive sport, and the need to educate potential customers. They successfully overcame these obstacles by strategically sourcing international and local archery brands, investing in customer education through consultations and training, and developing a strong digital presence to build an engaged community of archery enthusiasts.

At the onset, Excella Archery focused on supplying quality archery equipment across Malaysia and Southeast Asia. Increasingly, the company has started collaborating with stakeholders to boost its market presence further. The company's first significant milestone was sponsoring the UMP-Excella International Indoor Archery Championships at Universiti Malaysia Pahang in 2019, attracting over 500 athletes from six countries. The event marked its strong entry into the regional archery community. Over the years, Excella expanded its collaborations with multiple archery clubs and sports councils, supporting national tournaments like the UNISZA Open and Selangor Open, while also partnering with reputable universities and institutes for research, product development, and training programmes. Alongside its retail operations, the company has developed a robust online presence to engage customers, provide product education, and foster a wider archery community throughout Southeast Asia.

Therefore, Excella Archery makes an interesting case study given the unique cultural, religious, and market factors surrounding archery in Malaysia. Archery is closely linked to the Sunnah of the Prophet Muhammad ﷺ, making it a sport that carries spiritual and historical significance in the Muslim-majority country. This association enhances archery’s cultural relevance beyond just a recreational activity. Additionally, archery represents a niche but growing Southeast Asian market, with limited dedicated distributors serving this specialised field. Excella Archery’s focus on quality products, customer education, and community engagement highlights how a business can succeed by addressing this underserved segment.

Current Marketing Strategies of Excella Archery Distribution Sdn. Bhd.

The current marketing strategy of Excella Archery can be regarded as comprehensive and well-rounded. Central to its approach is the extensive product range and brand positioning. It has a great collection of top-quality archery gear and accessories. Excella Archery sources its products from famous brands like AAE, Yonex, Core Archery, and Speciality Archery. Because it offers such a wide variety, it can cater to a diverse target market, from people starting out who need easy-to-use beginner sets to expert archers looking for the best and most advanced equipment. This way, Excella makes sure there is something perfect for every customer.

Besides having a wide range of products, Excella Archery actively sponsors and collaborates in big archery events. For instance, Excella Archery was involved in the UMP–Excella International Indoor Archery Championships 3.0 held in December 2019 as a collaborator and sponsor. The tournament was organised by the Centre for Sports and Culture, Department of Student Affairs and Alumni, and the UMP Archery Club. Excella Archery sponsored prizes worth more than RM30,000 for the event. Doing this helps the archery community grow and shows that Excella Archery is integral to developing the sport in Malaysia. These sponsorships make Excella Archery more visible to archers and fans, building trust and a strong reputation in the challenging archery market.

Excella Archery knows that being part of the archery community is very important. It teams up with universities, archery clubs, and sports councils, becoming an impactful part of the archery world by working closely with these groups. These partnerships help the company build a loyal customer base among beginners or professionals and encourage more people to try archery. Through these strong connections, Excella Archery has grown into a supportive network since its establishment in 2018.

Excella Archery recognises the significance of online presence today, especially as more shopping and learning happen online. Its website has a user-friendly interface, strong visual appeal, and well-structured navigation. It makes it easy for anyone interested in archery to find what they need or to communicate with the company for more information. This online presence helps Excella Archery reach more customers and keeps people interested and involved.

Business Potential of Excella Archery Distribution Sdn. Bhd. as a Steward of the Prophetic Archery Tradition

Excella Archery should position itself as more than just a typical archery business. It should aim to connect deeply with Islam's spiritual and cultural heritage by promoting the Sunnah of the Prophet Muhammad ﷺ through archery. This is possible through three effective and interconnected dimensions.

Firstly, the **spiritual aspect**: Archery should not only be promoted as a sport but also be endorsed as an appreciation of Sunnah, a sport that cultivates patience, focus, and discipline, echoing the values taught in Islamic tradition. By weaving these spiritual principles into its training programmes, Excella Archery can create a unique platform where archery becomes a path to personal growth and faith, offering a value-added product package that distinguishes the company from the market. The second dimension is the **educational aspect**: Excella Archery is to showcase its commitment to developing unique archery curricula and workshops embedded with Islamic teachings and Prophetic traditions. These blended educational modules enable Muslims to appreciate archery's deep history and spiritual significance, strengthening their connection to the sport and faith. Last but not least is the **cultural aspect**: Excella Archery should organise events, competitions, and exhibitions as a medium to encourage the community to celebrate Islamic heritage through the art of archery. These gatherings bring people together, helping them feel proud of their Islamic heritage and traditions.

Repositioning itself by means of these dimensions will enable Excella Archery to become a steward of faith, education, and culture, inspiring archers who will see their love for archery as a meaningful extension of their spirituality and heritage, beyond hobby. This positioning will transform Excella Archery into a brand with a heart and soul, leading the way in archery besides preserving and promoting the rich legacy of the Prophetic tradition.

What is next for Excella Archery Distribution Sdn. Bhd.?

Excella Archery has the potential to blossom not just in the business of archery equipment and accessories, but as a brand that ignites the love of the Prophet Muhammad ﷺ into the hearts of archers. To realise this mission, feasible strategies include

Brand Positioning - Excella Archery can use a Sunnah-driven brand positioning strategy by aligning its brand identity with the practices and teachings of the Prophet Muhammad ﷺ. By highlighting archery as a Sunnah sport, Excella Archery can connect emotionally with Muslim consumers who value spiritual fulfilment alongside physical activity, differentiating itself from competitors. The brand should consistently focus on clear messaging that reflects these values across all marketing channels, building partnerships with Islamic organisations to enhance credibility, and offering educational content that deepens customers' understanding of archery's spiritual significance. This value-driven positioning fosters loyalty and meaningful connection with the target market, ultimately establishing Excella Archery as the preferred brand among archers who appreciate both sport and faith.

Product Development— Next, Excella Archery can leverage innovation to gain a competitive advantage by incorporating Islamic-inspired designs and offering customised archery kits. Embodying Islamic art motifs, calligraphy, and symbolic patterns into bows, arrows, and accessories creates products that resonate deeply with Muslim archers who value cultural and spiritual identity. Value-added service to customise kits tailored to individual preferences or skill levels adds exclusivity and further enhances the archer experience. This innovation distinguishes Excella Archery in the competitive equipment market while honouring the rich legacy of archery in Islamic tradition, fostering a stronger emotional connection with customers while expanding the brand's appeal locally and regionally.

Community Engagement—Excella Archery can become part of the community by collaborating with mosques, Islamic schools, and cultural centres. By collaborating with mosques, it can leverage these trusted community centres to introduce archery as a Sunnah sport, hosting workshops, training sessions, and events, integrating physical activity with spiritual values. Partnering with schools allows Excella Archery to promote archery among youth, encouraging participation through curriculum support, after-school programmes, and inter-school competitions. This grassroots community engagement raises awareness and interest in archery. It nurtures a new generation of archers who connect the sport with their cultural and religious identity, fostering loyalty and sustained growth for the brand.

Content Creation—To reach an even broader target market, Excella Archery can share authentic, informative, and inspiring content that resonates with the Muslim community. By sharing educational videos, tutorials, and articles highlighting the spiritual significance of archery as a Sunnah sport, it can engage and educate its audience while building trust and credibility. Additionally, Excella Archery can create an interactive and connected community by leveraging social media platforms to showcase customer stories, product demonstrations, and event highlights. Content creation can be a powerful strategy to strengthen brand loyalty and position Excella Archery as more than just a retailer, but also as an influential member of the archery community.

Certification Programmes and Strategic Partnerships: Lastly, Excella Archery can offer certification programmes to acknowledge archers who complete training courses. In addition to being a formal acknowledgement, this certificate makes archers feel proud and part of a Prophetic tradition. Excella Archery should also establish more partnerships with existing archery organisations such as the National Archery Association of Malaysia (NAAM), the Traditional Archery Association of Malaysia (TAAM), the National Sports Institute of Malaysia, and academic institutions like University of Malaya (UM) and Universiti Putra Malaysia (UPM), as well as local clubs, including Empayar Sunnah Archery and Riding Club, which will enhance Excella's credibility and reach. These strategic collaborations will position it as a trusted leader committed to nurturing archers' physical skills and spiritual values, promoting sustained brand loyalty and market expansion.

Impact Potential

By embedding archery practice within the Islamic tradition framework, Excella Archery can cultivate a loyal customer base driven by faith and identity, contributing to preserving and propagating authentic Islamic heritage. It will become not just any archery business but a manifestation of faith through innovation. This holistic business approach will encourage the public to see archery as more than a sport; instead, it will be a medium of their spiritual and cultural journey, pursuing a healthy lifestyle with deep respect for the Prophetic tradition.

Discussion questions.

1. Why is it important for Excella Archery to align its business with the Sunnah of the Prophet Muhammad ﷺ?
2. How can leveraging Islamic expression and heritage in marketing create a competitive advantage for Excella Archery?
3. What strategic steps should Excella Archery take to embed Islamic archery's spiritual, educational, and cultural aspects in its business?
4. How does promoting archery as a Sunnah help Excella Archery in community building and customer loyalty?
5. Why should Excella Archery incorporate educational and spiritual content alongside product offerings?

About the Journal

The IIUM Journal of Case Studies in Management is an internationally refereed journal published twice yearly (January & August) by the Kulliyyah of Economics and Management Sciences, International Islamic University Malaysia.

The journal promotes case studies in the field of management. However, the editorial committee may receive a case study that is superficially related to "management" (MG), whereas its contents are directly related to another discipline. For example, a case study on "Financial Management" (FM). It is more linked to finance than management because the case contains a core issue on finance or financial management, not management. The word "management" in FM does not change the FM discipline to MG. FM is not MG, and vice versa but the two disciplines can be inter-related. To make the FM case fit the journal, the case author must reshape it towards "management" although the core issue of finance or FM remains.

The same explanation can be offered, for instance to "Marketing" or "Marketing Management" (MM). The word "management" in MM does not change the discipline of MM to MG. To make the MM case fit the journal, the case author must reshape it towards "management" although the core issue of marketing or MM remains.

Case studies provide certain educational objectives. While academic papers are more inclined towards enhancing knowledge and understanding in the areas, case studies inculcate applied-based learning and the acquisition of (problem-solving and decision-making) skills. In management, textbooks normally publish decision-making or problem-solving case studies.

The cases can be used by instructors, trainers, coaches, and students in certificates, diploma, bachelor, master's in business administration, business management, or similar programmes. They may also be used for training and executive development.

Authors are highly encouraged to submit cases that deal with management issues in the Asia-Pacific region.

Type of access
Open access. This is due to the maximum dissemination of the management cases published in the journal. However, the instructors of the cases are expected to acknowledge the journal while using the cases for class discussion.

Review Process
Currently, every submitted case is reviewed by two experts in the area using a double-blind reviewing process. The editorial makes the final decision whether the case would be accepted or rejected on the basis of the recommendations of both the reviewers.

Publication Process
After completion of the reviewing process, if a case is accepted by the editorial board, it will be sent for copyediting followed by the publication of the case. At this moment, only soft copies of the cases are published through the journal website.

Publication Fee
No publication fees are charged.

Publication Ethics

IIUM Journal of Case Studies in Management (IJCSM), a high quality management case journal, published by the International Islamic University Malaysia, and has been publishing case studies on management since 2010.

While publishing, IJCSM adheres to the following code of ethics throughout its publication history:

a) IJCSM does not charge any publication fees from the authors.
b) IJCSM treats all submitted articles equally.
c) All cases submitted at IJCSM are double-blind, peer-reviewed professionally. The editorial team's decision on a paper largely depends upon the reviewers' comments and their recommendations. A third reviewer's evaluation is sought when no clear decision has emerged from the first two reviewers' reports. IJCSM maintains confidentiality of reviewers' identities at all time.
d) Authorships are limited to those who have made a significant contribution to the work.
e) IJCSM never publishes any plagiarised work and takes the matter very seriously. In case of plagiarism, the concerned author is notified and he/she is barred from any future submission.
f) Self-plagiarism is not condoned either. An author cannot submit essentially the same materials which have been published elsewhere.
g) It is highly unethical to submit an article concurrently to more than one journal.
h) The authors must not infringe any copyright. While preparing the paper, if any copyrighted materials are used, it is the author’s responsibility to seek permission from the copyright owners. Any breach of copyright will result in retraction of the published paper.
i) In the reviewing process, if any reviewer finds a conflict of interest, he/she will not be reviewing the manuscript and will return the manuscript to the IJCSM desk.

Submission Preparation Checklist

As part of the submission process, authors are required to check off their submission's compliance with all of the following items, and submissions may be returned to authors that do not adhere to these guidelines.

The submission has not been previously published, nor is it before another journal for consideration (or an explanation has been provided in Comments to the Editor).

There are three files:
1. Main case file WITHOUT author details. The case ends with Discussion questions,
2. Teaching notes which comprises the answer of the Discussion questions, and
3. Title page which consists of the Title of the case, names and affliations of all the authors and the abstract of the case.

The submission file is in Microsoft Word file format. Where available, URLs for the references have been provided.

The text is DOUBLE-spaced; uses a 12-point font; employs italics, rather than underlining (except with URL addresses); and all illustrations, figures, and tables are placed within the text at the appropriate points, rather than at the end.

The text adheres to the stylistic and bibliographic requirements outlined in the Author Guidelines, which is provided below.

Author Guidelines

Submission Process
Cases submitted for review must be written in English language (UK) and typed in double-space or single-space using Times Roman 12 point font to be printed on A4 size paper with 1-inch margin on all sides. Cases should be described in past tense. The journal prefers short and medium length cases of not exceeding 6,000 words.

Three files should be uploaded. The first file will contain the case which ends with Discussion questions. This file should be anonymous. The second file will contain the teaching notes. Without teaching notes, the case will not be processed and authors will be notified accordingly. The teaching notes should include the following:

a) The learning objectives addressed in the case.
b) The relevant management issue observed in the case.
c) Linkages with available literature on the issues highlighted in the case.
d) Answer of the Discussion questions

The third file is the title page. This file should contain the title of the case, names and affiliations of all the authors and the abstract of the case.

The case write-up must contain the Abstract of the case. This appears after the Title in the first page of first file.

Figures and tables essential to the case content should be embedded in the text and numbered consecutively. A reference list should be provided at the end. The case must follow APA style for references, exhibits, figures and tables. The details of reference format has been provided at the end of this section.

The manuscript should be submitted by using online submission system. All contributions will be fully refereed by the double blind review process. The language of the case should be proofread by a professional proofreader.

CASES SUBMITTED WHICH DO NOT COMPLY WITH THE ABOVE REQUIREMENTS WILL BE RETURNED TO THE AUTHORS.

Case writers must solicit necessary permission from the company before identifying the organization or person concerned.

Details of Reference format:

JOURNAL ARTICLES

One Author

Williams, J. H. (2008). Employee engagement: Improving participation in safety. *Professional Safety*, 53(12), 40-45.

Two to Seven Authors [List all authors]

Keller, T. E., Cusick, G. R., & Courtney, M. E. (2007). Approaching the transition to adulthood: Distinctive profiles of adolescents aging out of the child welfare system. *Social Services Review*, 81, 453-484.

MAGAZINE ARTICLE

Mathews, J., Berrett, D., & Brillman, D. (2005, May 16). Other winning equations. *Newsweek*, 145(20), 58-59.

BOOK

Alexie, S. (1992). *The business of fancydancing: Stories and poems*. Brooklyn, NY: Hang Loose Press.

CHAPTER IN A BOOK

Booth-LaForce, C., & Kerns, K. A. (2009). Child-parent attachment relationships, peer relationships, and peer-group functioning. In K. H. Rubin, W. M. Bukowski, & B. Laursen (Eds.), Handbook of peer interactions, relationships, and groups (pp. 490-507). New York, NY: Guilford Press.

PROCEEDINGS

Abd. Aziz, M. J., Darus, S., Hassan, M. K., T. Wook, S. M., Ismail, M. N., Lek Chuan, J. K., et al. (2003, 30 September-2 October 2003). LSA and its applications in automated essay grading. Paper presented at the International Symposium in Information Technology (ITSIM 2003), Universiti Kebangsaan Malaysia.

ONLINE RESOURCES

Online Report from a Nongovernmental Organization

Kenney, G. M., Cook, A., & Pelletier, J. (2009). Prospects for reducing uninsured rates among children: How much can premium assistance programs help? Retrieved from Urban Institute website: http:// www.urban.org/url.cfm?ID=411823

Online Report with No Author Identified and No Date

GVUÂ©s 10th WWW user survey. (n.d.). Retrieved from http://www
.cc.gatech.edu/user_surveys/survey-1998-10/

Privacy Statement

The names and email addresses entered in this journal site will be used exclusively for the stated purposes of this journal and will not be made available for any other purpose or to any other party.

The IIUM Journal of Case Studies in Management

Vol. 16 No. 2 August 2025

Published by

الجامعة الإسلامية العالمية ماليزيا
INTERNATIONAL ISLAMIC UNIVERSITY MALAYSIA

Garden of Knowledge and Virtue

http://journals.iium.edu.my/ijcsm/index.php/jcsm

ISSN: 2810-2327 e-ISSN: 2710-7175